

CHINESE-MANDARIN

FLAMRIC

MILITARY DIALOGUES

Part 1

Reprinted for FLAMRIC in

AUGUST 1981

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

PREFACE

Each of these units consists of a dialogue, vocabulary, story comprehension, English test questions for the story comprehension, answers to English test questions, conversational response, translations, interpretation practice and role playing.

The dialogue, vocabulary, story comprehension, English test questions and answers are presented for self study. The conversational response, translations, interpretation practice and role playing are better presented by an instructor but can be used for self study.

It is recommended that you read the dialogue aloud before studying the vocabulary to give you practice in figuring out new characters from context. After studying the dialogue, vocabulary and reading the story comprehension, which contains most of the new vocabulary, answer the English test questions for the story comprehension in English and check your answers with the answers to the English questions.

CONTENTS

UNIT 1.....	1
UNIT 2.....	33
UNIT 3.....	67
UNIT 4.....	100
UNIT 5.....	140
UNIT 6.....	175
UNIT 7.....	215
UNIT 8.....	250
UNIT 9.....	285
VOCABULARY.....	324

The material contained in this volume was developed by the DLIFLC Chinese Course Development team.

UNIT 1

DIALOGUE



1. A: 王同志, 怎么你今天这么高兴啊?
B: 我儿子要参军了。他昨天接到通知说他下个月得入伍。
2. A: 呵, 那太好了! 真是你们的光荣。今年征多少人?
B: 不知道。那个通知就叫他下个月到天津去报到入伍。
天津离这儿不远。
3. A: 他是陆军还是别的军种?
B: 不能由他决定。他受完了基本训练以后由组织分派。
到哪个兵种去也得由组织决定。
4. A: 受训的时候可以随便回家吗?
B: 没有干部的许可, 不许随便回家。
5. A: 服几年兵役呢?
B: 如果他进陆军, 就服三年兵役。如果进海军, 那么就要五年。空军比陆军长, 比海军短, 要四年。
6. A: 我知道兵役制度有两种。一种叫志愿兵制, 一种叫征兵制。中国用哪种?
B: 从前两种都用。现在用的是征兵制。我们中国叫“义务兵役制”。
7. A: 为什么不叫征兵制呢?
B: 也许是因为义务兵役制好听一点儿吧。

1. A: Wáng Tóngzhì, zěnmē nǐ
jǐntiān zěnmē gāoxìng a?
B: Wǒ érzi yào cānjūn le. Tā
zuótiān jiēdào tōngzhī
shuō tā xiàge yuè děi rùwǔ.
- Comrade Wang, how come you are so
happy today?
My son is going to join the Armed
Forces. Yesterday he received
a notice saying he must enlist
(i.e., will be inducted) next
month.
2. A: Hē, nà tài hǎo le! Zhēn shì
nǐmēnde guāngróng.
Jǐnnián zhēng duōshǎo rén?
B: Bù zhīdao. Nèige tōngzhī
jiù jiào tā xiàge yuè dào
Tiānjīng qù bàodào rùwǔ.
Tiānjīng lí zhèr bùyuǎn.
- Gee, that's great! It's indeed
an honor for you. How many
people will be drafted this
year?
I don't know. The notice only
ordered him to report to
Tiānjīng for induction.
Tiānjīng isn't far from here.
3. A: Tā shì lùjūn háishi biéde
jūnzhǒng?
B: Bùnéng yóu tā juédìng. Tā
shòuwánle jīběn xùnliàn
yǐhòu yóu zǔzhī fēnpài.
Dào nèige bīngzhǒng qù yě
děi yóu zǔzhī juédìng.
- Will he be in the Army or another
branch of service?
It's not up to him to decide. He
will be assigned by the "organi-
zation" after he has completed
basic training. The "organiza-
tion" will also decide which
arm of service he will join.
4. A: Shòuxùn de shíhou kěyǐ
suíbiàn huí jiā ma?
B: Méiyóu gānbùde xǔkě, bùxǔ
suíbiàn huí jiā.
- Can he return home whenever he
likes while he's in basic
training?
He can't return home whenever he
likes without the cadre's
permission.
5. A: Fú jǐnnián bīngyì ne?
B: Rúguǒ tā jìn lùjūn, jiù fú
sānnián bīngyì. Rúguǒ jìn
hǎijūn, nàme jiù yào
wǔnián. Kōngjūn bǐ lùjūn
cháng, bǐ hǎijūn duǎn, yào
sìnián.
- How many years will he serve?
If he enters the Army, then he
will serve three years. If he
enters the Navy, then it will
take five years. The Air Force
is longer than the Army, but
shorter than the Navy, requiring
four years.

6. A: Wǒ zhīdao bīngyì zhīdù yǒu liǎngzhǒng. Yìzhǒng jiào zhìyuàn bīngzhì, yìzhǒng jiào zhēngbīngzhì. Zhōngguó yòng nǎizhǒng?

B: Cóngqián liǎngzhǒng dōu yòng. Xiānzài yòng de shì zhēngbīngzhì. Wǒmen Zhōngguó jiào yìwù bīngyìzhì.

7. A: Wèishénme bú jiào zhēngbīngzhì ne?

B: Yěxǔ shì yīnwei yìwù bīngyìzhì zhì hǎotīng yìdiǎnr ba.

I know there are two kinds of military service systems. One is called the voluntary enlistment system and the other is called the conscription system. Which system does China use?

In the past we used both kinds. Now we use the conscription system, which we call the "yìwù bīngyìzhì" in China.

Why isn't it called "zhēngbīngzhì"?

Maybe it's because "yìwù bīngyìzhì" sounds a little better.

VOCABULARY

报 到	bàodào	to report (for duty, conference, etc.)
兵 种	bīngzhǒng	arm of service (i.e., infantry, artillery, etc.)
参 军	cān jūn	to join the Armed Forces
长	cháng	to be long
分 派	fēnpài	to assign
光 荣	guāngróng	glory, honor; to be glorious
好 听	hǎotīng	to be pleasant to listen to
呵	Hē	Wow, Gee
基本训练	jīběn xùnlìan	basic training
军 种	jūnzhǒng	branch of Armed Forces (i.e., Army, Navy, Air Force)
入 伍	rùwǔ	to enlist, to be inducted
受 训	shòu xùn	to receive/undergo training
受 训 练	shòu xùnlìan	to receive/undergo training
受 完	shòuwán	to finish/complete (receiving training)
通 知	tōngzhī	notice; to notify
许	xǔ	to allow, to permit, to be allowed, to be permitted
许 可	xǔkě	permission
训 练	xùnlìan	training; to train
义 务	yìwù	obligation
义务兵役制	yìwùbīngyìzhì	conscription system (PRC)
由	yóu	by, from
征	zhēng	to draft (troops or recruits)

MST, Unit 1

征兵制	zhēngbīngzhì	conscription system
制度	zhìdù	system
志愿兵制	zhìyuànbīngzhì	voluntary enlistment system
组织	zǔzhī	organization; to organize

STORY COMPREHENSION

我们中国从前用的兵役制度是志愿兵制。现正用的是义务兵役制，也叫征兵制，每年得征六、七十万人。义务兵役制的好处是到了十八岁的人得服兵役，坏处是不愿意服兵役的人也得服兵役。

我有两个年轻的好朋友，一个是小张、一个是小王。他们两个人昨天都接到通知叫他们明年一月到上海去报到入伍。小张对服兵役一直有很大的积极性，他十六岁的时候就要参军，跟组织的干部谈了好些次，干部说他岁数太小，不可以参军，所以他没入伍。现在接到通知，他高兴极了，今天早上七点钟就跑到我这儿来告诉我。我说“小张啊！你还没念完中学呢，等念完了中学再入伍，还不晚。何必现在就要去呢？”小张说，“老赵！

Wǒmen Zhōngguó cóngqián yòngde bīngyì zhìdù shì zhìyuànbīngzhì. Xiànzài yòngde shì yìwùbīngyìzhì, yě jiào zhēngbīngzhì, měinián dēi zhēng liù, qīshíwàn rén. Yìwùbīngyìzhì de hǎochù shì dào le shíbāsuì de rén dēi fú bīngyì, huàichu shì búyuànyì fú bīngyì de rén yě dēi fú bīngyì.

Wǒ yǒu liǎngge niánqīng de hǎo péngyou, yíge shì Xiǎo Zhāng, yíge shì Xiǎo Wáng. Tāmen liǎnggerén zuótiān dōu jiēdao tōngzhī jiào tāmen míngnián Yíyuè dào Shànghǎi qù bàodào rùwǔ. Xiǎo Zhāng duì fú bīngyì yìzhí yǒu hěn dàde jījīxìng, tā shíliùsuì de shíhou jiù yào cānjūn, gēn zǔzhī de gānbù tánle hǎoxiēcì, gānbù shuō tā suìshù tài xiǎo, bù kěyǐ cānjūn, suǒyǐ tā méi rùwǔ. Xiànzài jiēdao tōngzhī, tā gāoxìngjǐle, jīntiān zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng jiù pǎodào wǒ zhèr lái gàosu wǒ. Wǒ shuō, "Xiǎo Zhāng a! Nǐ hái méi niànwán zhōngxué ne, děng niànwánle zhōngxué zài rùwǔ,

我知道念书很要紧，可是服兵役更要紧。要是十八岁的学生都不去服兵役，谁去服兵役？我的计划是服了三、四年兵役以后再回到中学去念书。”他跟我说了这些话，喝了一瓶汽水就走了。

小王不是学生。他在南京附近的一个矿区开货车。他接到了通知以后，非常不高兴，差不多要哭了。今天下午三点钟我开会的时候，他叫我出来，跟我说他不愿意入伍。他说，第一、他打算今年十月结婚，结了婚以后怎么能服兵役呢？第二、他有工夫的时候喜欢看书，特别是跟马列主义有关系的著作。听说服兵役的人，什么书都不许看；第三、服五年兵役太长了。他希望在矿区或是到公社去搞生产工作。我认为他说的这些话完全

hái bùwǎn. Hébi xiànzài jiù yào qù ne?" Xiǎo Zhāng shuō, "Lǎo Zhào! Wǒ zhīdao niànshū hěn yào jǐn, kěshi fú bīngyì gèng yào jǐn. Yàoshi shíbāsuì de xuésheng dōu búqù fú bīngyì, shéi qù fú bīngyì? Wǒde jìhuà shì fúle sān, sìnián bīngyì yǐhòu zài huídào zhōngxué qù niànshū." Tā gēn wǒ shuōle zhèxiēhuà, hēle yìpíng qìshuǐ jiù zǒule.

Xiǎo Wáng búshi xuésheng. Tā zài Nánjīng fùjīn de yíge kuàngqū kāi huòchē. Tā jiēdào le tōngzhī yǐhòu, fēicháng bùgāoxìng, chābùduō yào kūle. Jīntiān xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng wǒ kāihuì de shíhou, tā jiào wǒ chūlai, gēn wǒ shuō tā búyuànyì rùwǔ. Tā shuō, dìyī, tā dǎsuan jīnnián Shíyuè jiéhūn, jiéle hūn yǐhòu zěnme néng fú bīngyì ne? Dìèr, tā yǒu gōngfu de shíhou xǐhuan kàn shū, tèbiéshì gēn Mǎliè Zhǔyì yǒu guānxi de zhùzuò. Tīngshuō fú bīngyì de rén, shénme shū dōu bùxǔ kàn; dìsān, fú wǔnián bīngyì tài chángle. Tā xīwàng zài kuàngqū huòshi dào gōngshè qù gǎo shēngchǎn gōngzuò.

不对，我越听越生气，就跟他说，“小王，我觉得你的看法完全错了。第一、如果组织决定你得服兵役，你就应该入伍，你结婚不结婚跟你入伍不入伍没有关系。你得听组织的话。第二、你说你看马列主义的书，我想你看的都是普通的报纸跟杂志。服兵役的时候看那些东西有什么用？第三、你说服五年兵役太长了。我知道海军的兵得服五年兵役。陆军和空军都没有那么长。你怎么知道组织不会把你分派到陆军或是空军呢？你服完了兵役不能去搞生产工作吗？你得记得服兵役对你是一种光荣，对你父母也是一种光荣。可惜我已经四十多岁了，太老了，不能入伍受训了；要不然我真愿意参军。”

小王听我说完了以后，半天没说话，最后他慢慢

Wǒ rènwéi tā shuōde zhèxiēhuà wánquán búduì, wǒ yuètīng yuèshēngqì, jiù gēn tā shuō, "Xiǎo Wáng, wǒ juéde nǐde kànfǎ wánquán cuòle. Dìyī, rúguǒ zǔzhī juéding nǐ děi fú bīngyì, nǐ jiù yīnggāi rùwǔ, nǐ jiéhūn bùjiéhūn gēn nǐ rùwǔ búrùwǔ méiyǒu guānxi. Nǐ děi tīng zǔzhīde huà. Dìèr, nǐ shuō nǐ kàn Mǎliè Zhǔyì de shū, wǒ xiǎng nǐ kànde dōushi pǔtōngde bàozhǐ gēn zázhì. Fú bīngyì de shíhou kàn nàxiē dōngxi yǒu shénme yòng? Dìsān, nǐ shuō fú wǔnián bīngyì tài chángle. Wǒ zhīdao hǎijūn de bīng děi fú wǔnián bīngyì. Lùjūn hé kōngjūn dōu méiyǒu nàme cháng. Nǐ zěnmē zhīdao zǔzhī búhuì bǎ nǐ fēnpài dào lùjūn huòshì kōngjūn qù ne? Nǐ fúwánle bīngyì bùnéng qù gāo shēngchǎn gōngzuò ma? Nǐ děi jìde fú bīngyì duì nǐ shì yìzhǒng guāngróng, duì nǐ fùmǔ yě shì yìzhǒng guāngróng. Kěxǐ wǒ yǐjīng sìshíduōsuì le, tài lǎole, bùnéng rùwǔ shòuxùnle; yàoburán wǒ zhēn yuànyì cānjūn."

Xiǎo Wáng tīng wǒ shuōwánle yǐhòu, bàntiān méishuōhuà, zuìhòu tā

地说，“老赵，我了解了我的看法完全不对。入伍受训对我有好处，对国家也有好处。不过，我有一个问题，我父母常常生病，我受训的时候要是他们又病了，干部同志许不许我回家看他们？”我说，“虽然我不是干部，可是我想要是你父母病得很利害，干部一定会许你回家的。”我还告诉他，服兵役的时候要是他想结婚，得有组织的许可。我说完了这些话以后，看看钟已经四点一刻了，就跟小王说，“我还得回去开会呢。你走吧，今天晚上到你家去再跟你谈。”

mǎnmǎnrde shuō, "Lǎo Zhào, wǒ xiànzài liǎojiě wǒde kànfǎ wánquán búduì. rùwǔ shòuxùn duì wǒ yǒu hǎochù, duì guójiā yě yǒu hǎochù. Búguò, wǒ yǒu yíge wèntí, wǒ fùmǔ chángcháng shēngbìng, wǒ shòuxùn de shíhou yàoshi tāmen yòu bìngle, gānbù tóngzhì xǔ bùxǔ wǒ huíjiā kàn tāmen?" Wǒ shuō, "Suǐrán wǒ búshi gānbù, kěshi wǒ xiǎng yàoshi nǐ fùmǔ bìngde hěn lìhai, gānbù yídìng huì xǔ nǐ huíjiā de." Wǒ hái gàosu tā, fú bīngyì de shíhou yàoshi tā xiǎng jiéhūn, děi yǒu zǔzhǐ de xǔkě. Wǒ shuōwánle zhèxiēhuà yǐhòu, kànkàn zhōng yǐjīng sìdiǎn yíkè le, jiù gēn Xiǎo Wáng shuō, "Wǒ hái děi huíqù kāihuì ne. Nǐ zǒuba, jīntiān wǎnshang dào nǐ jiā qù zài gēn nǐ tán."

ENGLISH QUESTIONS
for
STORY COMPREHENSION

1. How many people are drafted in China each year?
2. What is the advantage of the Chinese conscription system?
3. What is the disadvantage of the Chinese conscription system?
4. Xiao Zhang and Xiao Wang both received draft notices. (1) When (year, month) and (2) where did the notices say they were to report?
5. How did Xiao Zhang feel about performing his military duty prior to receiving the notice?
6. How old was Xiao Zhang when he initially wished to join the Armed Forces?
7. When Xiao Zhang first expressed his wish to enlist, why did the cadre tell him that he could not?

MST, Unit 1

8. When (day, time) did Xiao Zhang come to see me?
9. What did I advise Xiao Zhang to do prior to entering service?
10. What was Xiao Zhang's plan?
11. What is Xiao Wang's profession/job?
12. How did Xiao Wang feel upon receiving the draft notice?
13. What was I doing when Xiao Wang came to see me?
14. Xiao Wang gave three reasons for not wishing to be inducted. What was the first reason that he gave?
15. What was the second reason?
16. What was the third reason?
17. How did I feel when Xiao Wang was telling me the reasons?

MST, Unit 1

18. According to my first comment, what has no bearing on whether he is inducted or not?
19. According to my observation, what two (2) items has Xiao Wang been reading?
20. What service (of the Armed Forces) do I tell Xiao Wang requires five years of service?
21. What reason do I give as to why I cannot enlist?
22. After recognizing the "error of his ways," what was the problem/question that Xiao Wang asked me about?
23. In my opinion, what situation would warrant the cadre's permission to allow Xiao Wang to return home?
24. What other situation/affair required the permission of the "organization?"
25. Why did I ask Xiao Wang to leave?

STORY COMPREHENSION
Answers to Questions

1. How many people are drafted in China each year?
(6-700,000 [people])
2. What is the advantage of the Chinese conscription system?
(all 18-year-olds are drafted)
3. What is the disadvantage of the Chinese conscription system?
(those not wanting to serve are also drafted)
4. Xiao Zhang and Xiao Wang both received draft notices. (1) When (year, month) and (2) where did the notices say they were to report?
(1. January of next year; 2. Shànghǎi)
5. How did Xiao Zhang feel about performing his military duty prior to receiving the notice?
(very enthusiastic)
6. How old was Xiao Zhang when he initially wished to join the Armed Forces?
(16 [years old])
7. When Xiao Zhang first expressed his wish to enlist, why did the cadre tell him that he could not?
([they said that] he was too young)
8. When (day, time) did Xiao Zhang come to see me?
(today, 7:00 a.m.)
9. What did I advise Xiao Zhang to do prior to entering service?
(finish middle school [junior-senior high school])

MST, Unit 1

10. What was Xiao Zhang's plan?
(to serve 3-4 years and then return to school)
11. What is Xiao Wang's profession/job?
(railroad engineer OR drives trains)
12. How did Xiao Wang feel upon receiving the draft notice?
(very unhappy OR like crying)
13. What was I doing when Xiao Wang come to see me?
(holding a meeting OR was in a meeting)
14. Xiao Wang gave three reasons for not wishing to be inducted. What was the first reason that he gave?
(he planned to get married [in October])
15. What was the second reason?
(he likes to read AND/OR he heard that soldiers are not allowed to read)
16. What was the third reason?
(the [term of] service is too long OR he wants to [help] raise production in the mining district or the commune)
17. How did I feel when Xiao Wang was telling me the reasons?
(that he was wrong OR the more I heard the angrier I got)
18. According to my first comment, what has no bearing on whether he is inducted or not?
(whether or not he gets married)
19. According to my observation, what two (2) items has Xiao Wang been reading?
(1. [common] newspapers, and 2. magazines)

MST, Unit 1

20. What service (of the Armed Forces) do I tell Xiao Wang requires five years of service?

(the Navy)

21. What reason do I give as to why I cannot enlist?

(I'm [already] over forty [years old] OR I'm too old)

22. After recognizing the "error of his ways," what was the problem/question that Xiao Wang asked me about?

(his parents were often ill OR would the cadre permit him to return home [to see his parents])

23. In my opinion, what situation would warrant the cadre's permission to allow Xiao Wang to return home?

(if his parents became seriously ill)

24. What other situation/affair required the permission of the "organization?"

(getting married [while in service])

25. Why did I ask Xiao Wang to leave?

(it was already 4:15 OR it was late [by implication] OR I had to return to the meeting)

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 请说一说中国现在用的是什么样的兵役制度？这种制度的好处在哪儿？

Qǐng shuōyishuō Zhōngguó xiànzài yòngde shì shénme bīngyì zhìdù?
Zhèzhǒng zhìdù de hǎochù zài nǎr?

2. 你是在哪儿受的基本训练？受完了训练以后，组织就派你到哪儿去？为什么？

Nǐ shì zài nǎr shòude jīběn xùnliàn? Shòuwánle xùnliàn yǐhòu, zǔzhī
jiù pài nǐ dào nǎr qù? Wèishénme?

3. 为什么中国的青年接到入伍通知以后，他们的父母很高兴？

Wèishénme Zhōngguó de qīngnián jiēdào rùwǔ tōngzhī yǐhòu, tāmen de
fùmǔ hěn gāoxìng?

4. 中国每年差不多得征多少人服兵役？这些人都喜欢参军吗？为什么？

Zhōngguó měinián chàbùduō děi zhēng duōshǎo rén fú bīngyì? Zhèxiē
rén dōu xǐhuan cānjūn ma? Wèishénme?

5. 美国现在用的是什么样的兵役制度？这种制度的好处跟坏处在哪儿？

Měiguó xiànzài yòngde shì shénme bīngyì zhìdù? Zhèzhǒng zhìdù de
hǎochù gēn huàichù zài nǎr?

6. 参军以后，士兵能不能请组织分派他到喜欢去的兵种服兵役？

Cānjūn yǐhòu, shìbīng néng bùnéng qǐng zǔzhī fēnpài tā dào xǐhuan
qù de bīngzhǒng fú bīngyì?

7. 美国现在有几个军种？你喜欢在哪个军种服兵役？为什么？
Měiguó xiànzài yǒu jǐge jūnzhǒng? Nǐ xǐhuan zài nǎge jūnzhǒng fú bīngyì? Wèishénme?
8. 受基本训练的时候，有什么事情让你不高兴吗？为什么？
Shòu jīběn xùnliàn de shíhou, yǒu shénme shìqìng ràng nǐ bùgāoxìng ma? Wèishénme?
9. 服完了兵役以后，你打算还回学校学习吗？为什么？
Fúwánle bīngyì yǐhòu, nǐ dǎsuàn hái huí xuéxiào xuéxí ma? Wèishénme?
10. 请你把服兵役的时期最有意思的事情说一说。
Qǐng nǐ bǎ fú bīngyì de shíqī zuì yǒuyìsi de shìqìng shuōyishuō.
11. 要是干部说你的受训成绩不好，你说什么？
Yàoshi gānbù shuō nǐde shòuxùn chéngjī bùhǎo, nǐ shuō shénme?
12. 请你说一说为什么满了十八岁的青年都有服兵役的义务？
Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō wèishénme mǎnle shíbāsuì de qīngnián dōu yǒu fú bīngyì de yìwù?
13. 如果中国的士兵要跟外国女孩子/人结婚，组织会不会许可？为什么？
Rúguǒ Zhōngguó de shìbīng yào gēn wàiguó nǚháizi/rén jiéhūn, zǔzhī huì búhuì xǔkě? Wèishénme?
14. 士兵在受基本训练的时期，组织不许他们随便回家，为什么？
Shìbīng zài shòu jīběn xùnliàn de shíqī, zǔzhī bùxǔ tāmen suíbiàn huíjiā, wèishénme?

15. 如果你是一个干部，你对第一天来报到受训的人说什么？

Rúguǒ nǐ shì yíge gānbù, nǐ duì dìyītiān lái bàodào shòuxùn de rén shuō shénme?

16. 跟你一起受训的同志都是由什么地方来的？

Gēn nǐ yìqǐ shòuxùn de tóngzhì dōu shì yóu shénme dìfang lái de?

17. 你来入伍的前一天，父母跟你谈了些什么？

Nǐ lái rùwǔ de qiányītiān, fùmǔ gēn nǐ tánle xiē shénme?

18. 入伍受训练的时期，要是你想结婚，需（要）不需要得到组织的许可？为什么？

Rùwǔ shòu xùnlìan de shíqī, yàoshi nǐ xiǎng jiéhūn, xū(yào) bùxūyào dédào zǔzhī de xǔkě? Wèishénme?

19. 请说明一下(一)志愿兵制、(二)征兵制和(三)义务兵役制的意思。

Qǐng shuōmíng yíxià (1) zhìyuànbīngzhì, (2) zhēngbīngzhì hé (3) yìwù-bīngyìzhì de yìsi.

20. 在中国，哪一个军种服役时期最长？哪一个最短？最长的要服几年兵役？最短的呢？

Zài Zhōngguó, nǎyige jūnzhǒng fúyì shíqī zuì cháng? Nǎyige zuì duǎn? Zuì chángde yào fú jǐnián bīngyì? Zuì duǎnde ne?

21. 为什么美国进口的东西赶不上出口的多？

Wèishénme Měiguó jìnkǒu de dōngxì gǎnbúshàng chūkǒude duō?

22. 美国工人在业余的时候都作什么？

Měiguó gōngrén zài yèyú de shíhou dōu zuò shénme?

23. 你们宿舍里是几个人占一个房间？

Nǐmen sùshèlǐ shì jǐge rén zhàn yíge fángjiān?

24. 听说美国大学生可以在学校受军事训练，这个对他们将来入伍有帮助吗？为什么？

Tīngshuō Měiguó dàxuésheng kěyǐ zài xuéxiào shòu jūnshì xùnliàn,
zhège duì tāmen jiānglái rùwǔ yǒu bāngzhù ma? Wèishénme?

25. 在中国，要是有一个青年有机会在人民解放军里边儿服兵役，就会觉得非常光荣，为什么？

Zài Zhōngguó, yàoshi yíge qīngnián yǒu jīhuì zài rénmin jiěfàngjūn
lǐbianr fú bīngyì, jiù huì juéde fēicháng guāngróng, wèishénme?

26. 受训的时候，在什么情况可以回家？

Shòuxùn de shíhou, zài shénme qíngkuàng kěyǐ huíjiā?

27. 要是你刚满十六岁，中学还没毕业，能不能请组织让你服兵役？为什么？

Yàoshi nǐ gāng mǎn shíliùsuì, zhōngxué hái méi bìyè, néng bùnéng
qǐng zǔzhī ràng nǐ fú bīngyì? Wèishénme?

28. 在美国服兵役是不是每一个年轻人的义务？为什么？

Zài Měiguó fú bīngyì shì búshì měiyíge niánqīngrén de yìwù?
Wèishénme?

29. 请说一说入伍以后的生活跟在家里有什么不同？

Qǐng shuōyishuō rùwǔ yǐhòu de shēnghuó gēn zài jiālǐ yǒu shénme
bùtóng?

30. 在美国，一个人过了多少岁就不可以参军了？为什么？

Zài Měiguó, yíge rén guòle duōshǎosuì jiù bùkěyǐ cānjūn le?
Wèishénme?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. My husband enlisted in the Army in 1972. From October of 1972 to June of 1974, he underwent/received basic training. He is really not too intelligent.

2. The conscription system now used in the United States is the voluntary enlistment system. Now when a person does military service, he can often do the kind of work he wants to do.

3. When my grandfather joined the Armed Forces, he went to San Francisco to report. After reporting, he went to Washington to undergo basic training. After finishing basic training, he returned to San Francisco again. What a pity!

4. Which branch of the Armed Forces is most important? It depends on who you ask. If you ask a sailor, the Navy is most important. If you ask a soldier, then the Army is most important.

5. The cadre has a great obligation toward the people. At least one cadre unit is assigned to each village for the sake of helping the workers. This makes the people very happy.

6. Some people think that joining the Armed Forces is a very glorious affair. When they receive their enlistment notice, they become very happy.
7. What type of organization is used in today's conscription system? I really don't know. Most of the time, it seems that they have no organization.
8. Why am I so happy today? Because this morning I received notice to report for induction, and the name on the notice wasn't mine.
9. Undergoing basic training was very difficult, I couldn't sleep well, couldn't eat well, and it rained every day. I wasn't happy until after basic training was completed.
10. Sometimes doing military service is really embarrassing. When undergoing basic training, I remember there was one time we only had knives. Using a knife to eat soup is very difficult and also very dangerous.
11. Every husband has a big obligation toward his wife. He must wash the dishes each night. The special matters that he does are all assigned by his wife, and he must have her permission to leave home.
12. My brother has done several years military service so far. He entered the Army in 1970 and served for two years. Then he entered the Navy and served two years. I don't know what service he wants to enter now.

MST, Unit 1

13. I don't know where you are going to report for induction, but I'm going to the nearest restaurant. Before I report for induction, I want to drink some beer.

14. In this unit we have a very useful organization called the People's Obligation Society. People who have no obligations can enlist, but are not required to work.

15. Shaving every day is certainly a lot of trouble. But when you join the Armed Forces, you must shave every day.

16. I really like to listen to you talk. Everything that you say is really pleasant to listen to.

17. Today's modern conscription system is very good. Everyone must do military service. They all think that this is a great honor.

18. The voluntary enlistment system has many good points. First, not everyone must do military service. Second, if they want to join the Air Force, they can.

19. You should organize your time a little better. Now you have no free time. After organizing your time, then you can do the things that you want to do.

MST, Unit 1

20. Because I have too many obligations, I cannot come to your home for supper tonight.

21. When you joined the Armed Forces, what kind of training did you receive? The training that I underwent was basic training.

22. Why did you enlist? Was it because you considered the Army's standard of living comparatively high?

23. After finishing basic training, where do you hope to be assigned? In the southern part of the United States, the weather is very good and the days are comparatively long.

24. Both the conscription and voluntary enlistment system have good points. Which one do you think is best?

25. When your military service ends, do you still have a military obligation?

26. If you come to San Francisco to enlist, you can stay at my home. What day do you have to report?

MST, Unit 1

27. The day that you report for duty the first time always seems to be the longest. Actually every day is the same length.

28. The rice bowls used in this restaurant are really good looking; I would like to take them home with me, but that is committing an (criminal) offense.

29. Some training is very difficult and some is very easy. Generally speaking, the training which requires many instructors is the most difficult to undergo.

30. If you are injured, you should notify the police station. They will immediately send an ambulance here to take you to the hospital.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Míngtiān shì Xīngqīyī, zǎoshang bādiǎnzhōng huì yǒu hěnduō mǎnle shíbasuì de niánqīngrén lái bàoào rùwǔ.
2. Zhōngguó Jiěfàngjūn yíngōng yǒu lùjūn, hǎijūn hé kōngjūn sānge jūnzhǒng. Shòuwánle jībēn xùnliàn de zhànshì, zǔzhǐ jiù fēnpài tāmen dào zhè sānge jūnzhǒng qù fú bīngyì.
3. Yībānde shuō, Zhōngguóde niánqīngrén mǎnle shíbasuì bùjiǔ, jiù huì jiēdao cānjūn de tōngzhǐ, gàosu tāmen yīnggāi zài shénme shíhou, dào shénme dìfang qù bàoào.
4. Tīngshuō xīnbīng shòuwánle jībēn xùnliàn yǐhòu, méiyǒu zǔzhǐde xūkě, bùkěyì dào tā xiǎng qùde bīngzhǒng fú bīngyì.
5. Yǒude shìbīng lǎoshì bùxǐhuan zìjǐde gōngzuò. Rúguǒ tā zài lùjūn fú bīngyì, tā jiù xiǎng dào kōngjūn qù; rúguǒ tā zài kōngjūn fú bīngyì, jiù xiǎng dào hǎijūn qù.
6. Zhōngguó Jiěfàngjūn yěshì wèi rénmin fúwù de. Tāmen chángcháng bāngzhù zhūzai bùduì fùjīnde jūmín. Suǒyǐ hěn shòudào rénminde huānyíng.

MST, Unit 1

7. Jiēdào cānjūn tōngzhǐ de niánqīngrén, yīnggāi zài sānshítīān yīnèi xiàng zǔzhǐ bàodào, yàoburán, zǔzhǐ huì pài rén lái zhǎo tā.
8. Zài Zhōngguó, cānjūn shì měiyíge niánqīngrén de yìwù. Dànshì zhè búshì shuō měiyígerén dōu kěyǐ cānjūn. Suǒyǐ, néng cānjūn de niánqīngrén dōu juéde shì yìzhǒng guāngróng.
9. Nǐ dào zhège jūnshì xuéxiào lái niànshū yìqián, shòule jǐgeyuè de jībēn xùnliàn? Shòu jībēn xùnliàn de shíhou xuéxí shénme?
10. Zhōngguó mùqián yòng yìwù bīngyìzhì. Zhèzhǒng zhìdù yǐjīng yòngle hēnduōnián le.
11. Yǒu rén shuō, zài Zhōngguó yàoshi nǐde jībēn xùnliàn chéngjī fēicháng hǎo, kěyǐ qǐng zǔzhǐ fēnpài nǐ dào xiāng qùde bīngzhǒng fú bīngyì.
12. Yǒude guójiā yòng zhìyuàn bīngyìzhì, yǒude guójiā yòng zhēngbīngzhì. Bùguǎn zhèxiē guójiā yòng nǎyìzhǒng zhìdù, zhǐ yǒu mǎnle shíbasuì de niánqīngrén cái kěyǐ cānjūn.
13. Suǐrán cānjūn shì yìzhǒng guāngróng, kěshì zài Zhōngguó, yǒude rén juéde fú bīngyì tài kǔ, búyuànyì qù.

14. Rúguǒ nǐ jiēdào tōngzhǐ, jiào nǐ qù fú bīngyì. Nǐ qù háishi búqù?
15. Yībānde shuō, shòuwánle jīběn xùnlìan de xīnbīng, zǔzhǐ jiù ànzhào tāmen shòuxùn de chéngjī fēnpài tāmen dào yīnggāi qùde bīngzhǒng fú bīngyì.



INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate" because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Paul Read, an American tourist in China, strikes up a conversation with Jiǎn Xīndēng, a PLA soldier.

1. R: How many years have you been in the Army?

J: 两年了, 还有一年才能离开。
Liǎngnián le, hái yǒu yìnián cái néng líkāi.

2. R: You only have a three-year obligation?

J: 陆军的人服三年兵役, 海军五年、空军四年。
Lùjūn de rén fú sānnián bīngyì, hǎijūn wǔnián, kōngjūn sìnián.

3. R: Do you have a conscription system or do you have a voluntary enlistment program?

J: 我们不用志愿兵制了, 就用义务兵役制(或征兵制)。
Wǒmen búyòng zhìyuànbīngzhì le, jiù yòng yìwùbīngyìzhì (huò zhēngbīngzhì).

4. R: Gee, you mean you can't join the Armed Forces even if you want to?

J: 是啊? / 是的。我们中国人都认为服兵役是一件光荣的事。我们都很愿意服兵役, 你们美国呢?
Shì a! / Shìde. Wǒmen Zhōngguó rén dōu rènwéi fú bīngyì shì yíjiàn guāngróng de shì. Wǒmen dōu hěn yuànyì fú bīngyì, nǐmen Měiguó ne?

5. R: Before 1972, we had both the conscription and the voluntary enlistment systems. But now we only have the voluntary enlistment system. Can you enter the branch of the Armed Forces you want to join?

J: 不可以。受完了基本训练以后, 由国家/政府/组织分派。
Bù kěyì. Shòuwánle jīběn xùnliàn yǐhòu, yóu guójiā/zhèngfǔ/zǔzhī fēnpài.

6. R: When were you notified to report for induction?

J: 满了十八岁不久就会接到通知。在美国，到了多大岁数的人才可以参军？

Mǎnle shíbāsui bùjiǔ jiù huì jiēdào tōngzhī. zài Měiguó, dào le duō dà suìshù de rén cái kěyǐ cānjūn?

7. R: If we obtain parental permission, we can join as early as 17, but without permission we must be 18. Under the conscription system, we had to register for the draft when we turned 18 and then wait for notification that we were being inducted. If you voluntarily joined the service, then your name was removed from the draft list. At that time, everyone was obligated to serve six years. Now you can join the service of your choice for two, four, or six years.

J: 大家都在一起受基本训练吗？

Dàjiā dōu zài yìqǐ shòu jīběn xùnliàn ma?

8. R: No. Each of the Armed Services have their own special basic training. Where did you undergo basic training?

J: 天津。受完了训练以后，组织派我到上海的学校去学习修理汽车。我们在北京的单位有一个修理汽车的地方，现在我在那儿工作。我们干部跟外国朋友用的汽车都由我们修理。

Tiānjīng. Shòuwánle xùnliàn yǐhòu, zǔzhī pài wǒ dào Shànghǎi de xuéxiào qù xuéxí xiūlǐ qìchē. Wǒmen zài Běijīng de dānwèi yǒu yíge xiūlǐ qìchē de dìfang, xiānzài wǒ zài nàr gōngzuò. Wǒmen gānbù gēn wàiguó péngyou yòngde qìchē dōu yóu wǒmen xiūlǐ.

9. R: How many months did you undergo training to be an automotive mechanic?

J: 一共学了五个月以后，他们才许我自己一个人修理。

Yí gòng xuéle wǔge yuè yǐhòu, tāmen cái xǔ wǒ zìjǐ yíge rén xiūlǐ.

10. R: Are you happy about being assigned to your unit as a mechanic?

J: 我很高兴组织派我去受这种训练。将来我服完兵役以后，这种训练对我很有用。

Wǒ hěn gāoxìng zǔzhī pài wǒ qù shòu zhèzhǒng xùnliàn. Jiānglái wǒ fúwán bīngyì yǐhòu, zhèzhǒng xùnliàn duì wǒ hěn yǒuyòng.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Due to severe earthquakes and flooding in Western China, an immediate need has arisen for 15,000 additional inductees into the People's Liberation Army. Since this requirement was initiated in response to an emergency situation, the standard Induction/Training Systems of the PLA are not equipped to handle the additional inductees. The specific situation with which you are confronted is a three-party conference between representatives of the Induction System, the Training System, and the PLA, who have met in Beijing to make decisions regarding the induction and training of the additional personnel.

Role 1: Comrade Zhào representative of the PLA, whose task is to present the PLA requirements to the other two members of the committee, to establish schedules for the induction and training of troops, and to discover if the voluntary enlistment system is a viable option to the conscription system for inducting the required number of additional troops.

Role 2: Comrade Hú representative of the PLA Induction System, whose task is to recommend possible induction locations and to inform the PLA representative of the number of possible additional inductees at each site, to advise the PLA representative as to the time frame requirements for notification to induction to reporting for training (screening process), and to present his opinion with regard to the voluntary enlistment system.

Role 3: Comrade Mǎ representative of the PLA Training System, whose task is to provide the PLA representative with training sites and training timetables for both enlisted and officer personnel for all three services, to advise the PLA representative as to expected attrition rates in training, and to advise the PLA representative as to the capabilities of each of the proposed training sites (i.e., availability of cadre for instruction, availability of dormitory space for housing, etc.).

Scenario 2

Situation: Xiao Tian, who has just turned 18 (years of age), is talking to two friends about his upcoming induction. He has just received notice that in three weeks, he must report for induction at Nanjing but has several problems that he wishes to discuss with his friends first.

Role 1: Xiǎo Tián has been notified to report for induction in three weeks. He is naturally very excited about his upcoming assignment and training. His father is very sick, however, and though he considers his induction very glorious, he is worried about having someone to help his sick parent. He also wishes to enter the Navy, and is somewhat concerned about how many of the draftees will be assigned by the "organization" to the Navy. He has specifically come to these two friends because he knows that one of them served in the Navy for 10 years, while the other worked for the "organization" for a long time as an assignment secretary.

Role 2: Lǎo Zhāng has just been 'demobilized' from the Navy following 10 years of service in the Army followed by 10 years of service in the Navy. He is also a good friend of Xiao Tian's father, as they had served together for more than five years during the war with Japan. His task is to advise Xiao Tian as to the differences in service obligation for the two services, as well as to contrast the standards of living between the two services.

Role 3: Lǎo Hǎn served in the Regular Army for 20 years, and then as a cadre in the assignments bureau for five years. Though he knows neither Xiao Tian nor Xiao Tian's family, he is a good friend of Lao Zhang. His task is to brief Xiao Tian as to the percentage of inductees that become sailors, as well as to advise Xiao Tian as to his possible training location and subsequent duty location assignment.

Scenario 3

Situation: Lao Wang's son has just been inducted into the Army this week. Lao Wang has come to see an old friend who served in the military for more than 20 years to express some of his concerns regarding his son's entering the Armed Forces.

Role 1: Lǎo Wang is very happy about his son's entering the service, and considers this to be a very glorious matter. However, Lao Wang no longer has a wife (she has died), and has no other children, so he wants very much to be able to go see his son. His health is no longer very good, and Lao Wang wants to find out if his son can come home if he gets sick, or if his son can be assigned to Lao Wang's village when he finishes training.

Role 2: Lǎo Yú is an ex-serviceman who is very familiar with the procedures and conditions of the Army. He knows that new trainees are not allowed visitors during training, but that they occasionally may be allowed to leave post on the weekends. After training, all restrictions are removed, and the new soldiers can receive visitors at will. He also knows that there are no military stationed in the village, only cadre, so the chances of Lao Wang's son being stationed there are very slight.

UNIT 2

DIALOGUE



1. A: 在中国，男人都得服兵役吗？
B: 满了十八岁的男人都有服兵役的义务。可是也有例外。
2. A: 哪些人是例外？
B: 有的人可以缓役，有的人可以免役。比方说，身体不好或是有病的人可以缓役。在中学或是大学学习的学生也可以缓役。残废的人可以免役。如果一个人是家里唯一的劳动力，他也可以缓役。
3. A: 怎么叫“唯一的劳动力”？
B: 我的意思是如果他父母不能工作，需要他养，那么他就可以缓役。
4. A: 中国的人口这么多，每年一定有许多新兵入伍吧？
B: 不太多。满了十八岁的人虽然每年有九百万，可是只有百分之十的人可以入伍。新兵入伍以前，有体格检查。不合格的人占百分之六、七十。另外，有百分之二、三十的人“成分”不好或是有别的原因，也不许入伍。刨去这些人，就剩下百分之十左右了。
5. A: 什么人的“成分”不好呢？
B: 没有改造好的地主、反革命分子、反动分子、等等都是“成分”不好的。他们就是要参军，组织也不许他们参军。

6. A: 外国常常有人逃避兵役。你们中国也有这种情况吗？
B: 中国没有人逃避。反倒，大家都要参军入伍，因为我们认为服兵役是义务，也是权利。服兵役只有好处，没有坏处。

1. A: Zài Zhōngguó, nánrén dōu dēi fú bīngyì ma?
Must all the men in China do military service?
- B: Mǎnle shíbāsù de nánrén dōu yǒu fú bīngyì de yìwù. Kěshì yě yǒu lìwài.
All men who have reached eighteen years of age must fulfill their military service obligation. But there are also exceptions.
2. A: Něixiē rén shì lìwài?
Who are the exceptions?
- B: Yǒude rén kěyǐ huǎnyì, yǒude rén kěyǐ miǎnyì. Bǐfāng shuō, shēntǐ bùhǎo huòshì yǒu bìng de rén kěyǐ huǎnyì. Zài zhōngxué huòshì dàxué xuéxí de xuésheng yě kěyǐ huǎnyì. Cánfèide rén kěyǐ miǎnyì. Rúguǒ yíge rén shì jiālǐ wéiyìde láodònglì, tā yě kěyǐ huǎnyì.
Some may be deferred (and) some may be exempted. For example, those who have poor health or are sick may be deferred. High school or college students may also be deferred. Disabled persons may be exempted. If a person is the sole "bread-winner" in the family, he may also be deferred.
3. A: Zěnmē jiào "wéiyìde láodònglì"?
What do you mean by "wéiyìde láodònglì?"
- B: Wǒde yìsi shì rúguǒ tā fùmǔ bùnéng gōngzuò, xūyào tā yǎng, nàme tā jiù kěyǐ huǎnyì.
I mean that if his parents can't work and need him to support them, in that case he may then be deferred.
4. A: Zhōngguóde rénkǒu zěnmē duō, měinián yídìng yǒu xǔduō xīn bīng rùwǔ ba?
China has such a large population. I suppose there certainly must be a lot of new servicemen inducted each year?
- B: Bútài duō. Mǎnle shíbāsù de rén suǐrán měinián yǒu jiǔbǎiwàn, kěshì zhǐ yǒu bǎifēnzhīshí de rén kěyǐ rùwǔ. Xīn bīng rùwǔ yìqián, yǒu tǐgé jiǎnchá. Bùhége de rén zhàn bǎifēnzhīliùqīshí. Língwài, yǒu bǎifēnzhīèrsānshí de rén "chéngfèn" bùhǎo huòshì yǒu biéde yuányīn, yě bùxǔ rùwǔ. Páoqu zhèixiē rén, jiù shèng-xia bǎifēnzhīshí zuǒyòu le.
Not too many. Although each year there are nine million men who have turned eighteen, only 10% of them may be inducted. Before the new servicemen are inducted, there is a physical examination. Those who fail constitute 60-70%. Besides, there are 20-30% of the people who have a bad "social origin" or other reasons that disqualify them. After subtracting these people, it leaves only approximately 10%.

5. A: Shénme rén de "chéngfèn" bùhǎo ne?

Who has bad "social origins?"

B: Méiyǒu gǎizàohǎode dīzhǔ, fāngémíngfènzǐ, fǎndòngfènzǐ, dēngděng dōu shì "chéngfèn" bùhǎo de. Tāmen jiùshì yào cān jūn, zǔzhǐ yě bùxǔ tāmen cān jūn.

Landlords, counterrevolutionary elements, reactionary elements, etc. who have not been reformed all have bad "social origins?" Even if they wanted to join the Armed Forces, the "organization" wouldn't let them.

6. A: Wàiguó chángcháng yǒu rén táobì bīngyì. Nǐmen Zhōngguó yě yǒu zhèzhǒng qíngkuàng ma?

In some foreign countries there are always some people who dodge the draft. Do you also have this type of situation in China?

B: Zhōngguó méiyǒu rén táobì. Fǎndào, dàjiā dōu yào cān jūn rùwǔ, yīnwei wǒmen rènwéi fú bīngyì shì yìwù, yě shì quánlì. Fú bīngyì zhǐ yǒu hǎochù, méi yǒu huàichū.

Nobody dodges the draft in China. On the contrary, everyone wants to join the Armed Forces, because we feel that doing military service is an obligation as well as a right. There are only advantages and no disadvantages in doing military service.

VOCABULARY

百万	bǎiwàn	million
比方说	bǐfāng shuō	for example, for instance
残废的	cánfèide	to be disabled
成分	chéngfèn	ingredients, "social origin" (PRC)
等等	děngděng	etc.
反倒	fǎndào	on the contrary
反动分子	fǎndòngfēnzi	reactionary element
反革命分子	fǎngémìngfēnzi	counterrevolutionary element
一分子	-fēnzi	element
改造	gǎizào	to reform
合格	hégé	to be qualified, to be up to the standard
坏处	huàichu	disadvantage, bad point
缓役	huǎnyì	deferment; to be deferred (military service)
检查体格	jiǎnchá tǐgé	to give a physical examination, to have a physical examination
就是...也	jiùshi...yě	even if
例外	lìwài	exception; to be made an exception
满了	mǎnle	to have reached (a time limit)
免役	miǎnyì	exemption; to be exempted from (military service)
刨去	páoqù	to subtract, to exclude (in figuring or calculating)
权利	quánlì	right (as opposed to obligation)
身体	shēntǐ	body, health
剩下	shèngxia	to leave (a balance or remainder)

逃 避	táobì	to shirk, to dodge, to evade
体 格 检 查	tǐgé jiǎnchá	physical examination
唯 一 的	wéiyīde	only
原 因	yuányīn	cause, reason, grounds

STORY COMPREHENSION

现在中国青年都认为服兵役是一种光荣。如果组织不要他们入伍，他们就觉得很不高兴。逃避兵役的人非常少，恐怕只占百分之一。因为愿意入伍的人太多了，所以组织决定谁可以服兵役，谁不可以服兵役的时候，用的水平很高。身体不好的、成分不好的、或是有别的原因的，组织都不要他们服役；就是他们愿意，组织也不要他们。去年六月我们这个地方有四千多个满了十八岁的青年接到通知叫他们到天津去报到入伍。他们报到以后，医生就检查体格，发现有五百多人不合格，刨去这五百多人以后，就剩下三千六、七百人了。干部叫他们填表，把自己的职业、祖父、外祖父、父母从前做过的工

Xiànzài Zhōngguó qīngnián dōu
rènwéi fú bīngyì shì yìzhǒng guāngróng.
Rúguǒ zǔzhī búyào tāmen rùwǔ, tāmen
jiù juéde hěn bùgāoxìng. Táobì
bīngyì de rén fēicháng shǎo, kǒngpà
zhǐ zhàn bǎifēnzhīyī. Yīnwei yuànyì
rùwǔ de rén tài duō le, suǒyǐ zǔzhī
juédìng shéi kěyǐ fú bīngyì, shéi
bùkěyǐ fú bīngyì de shíhou, yòngde
shuǐpíng hěn gāo. Shēntǐ bùhǎode,
chéngfèn bùhǎode, huòshi yǒu biéde
yuányīnde, zǔzhī dōu búyào tāmen fú
yì; jiùshì tāmen yuànyì, zǔzhī yě
búyào tāmen. Qùnián Liùyuè wǒmen
zhège dìfang yǒu sìqiānduōge mǎnle
shíbāsui de qīngnián jiēdào tōngzhī
jiào tāmen dào Tiānjīng qù bàodào
rùwǔ. Tāmen bàodào yǐhòu, yīsheng
jiù jiǎnchá tǐgé, fāxiàn yǒu wǔbǎi-
duōrén bùhége, páoqù zhè wǔbǎiduōrén
yǐhòu, jiù shèngxia sānqiān liù,
qībǎirén le. Gàn bù jiào tāmen tián-
biǎo, bǎ zìjǐde zhíyè, zǔfù, wàizǔfù,
fùmǔ cóngqián zuòguode gōngzuò,

作，等等都写下来。干部看了以后，再决定谁免役、谁缓役，什么的。最后，只剩下了八百多人。我有五个年轻的朋友到天津去报到入伍。他们这五个人只有小周可以入伍服兵役。其他四个人，小赵、小钱、小孙、小李都回来了。

小赵缓役，因为他父亲不在了、母亲残废了、家里没有兄弟姐妹，组织认为他是家里唯一的劳动力，不应该入伍，要不然，没有人养他母亲。小钱的父母都不在了，有一个哥哥今年二十八岁，在空军服过四年兵役。现在在一个工厂工作。小钱自己在中学念书还有一年才毕业。干部说他也得缓役。小钱很不愿意缓役，跟干部说他希望入伍。可是干部说他还没念完书，他得把书念完了再谈服兵役的事。小钱说，“同志，我真想服兵役，你给我想个办法吧。”那个干部想了一会

děngděng dōu xiěxiàlai. Gānbù kànle yǐhòu, zài juédìng shéi miǎnyì, shéi huǎnyì, shénmede. Zuǐhòu, zhǐ shèng-xiale bābǎiduōrén. Wǒ yǒu wǔge niánqīngde péngyou dào Tiānjīng qù bàodào rùwǔ. Tāmen zhè wǔgerén zhǐ-yǒu Xiǎo Zhōu kěyǐ rùwǔ fú bīngyì. Qítā sìgerén, Xiǎo Zhào, Xiǎo Qián, Xiǎo Sūn, Xiǎo Lǐ dōu huílai.

Xiǎo Zhào huǎnyì, yīnwei tā fùqīn búzàile, Mǔqīn cánfèile, jiālǐ méiyǒu xiōngdìjiěmèi, zǔzhǐ rènwei tā shì jiālǐ wéiyīde láodònglì, bùyingāi rùwǔ, yàobúrán, méiyǒurén yǎng tā mǔqīn. Xiǎo Qián de fùmǔ dōu búzàile, yǒu yíge gēge jīnnián èrshíbāsùì, zài kōngjūn fúguo sìnián bīngyì. Xiànzài zài yíge gōngchǎng gōngzuò. Xiǎo Qián zìjǐ zài zhōngxué niànshū, háiyǒu yīnián cái bìyè. Gānbù shuō tā yě děi huǎnyì. Xiǎo Qián hěn búyuànyì huǎnyì, gēn gānbù shuō tā xīwàng rùwǔ. Kěshi gānbù shuō tā hái méi niànwán shū, tā děi bǎ shū niànwánle zài tán fú bīngyì de shì. Xiǎo Qián shuō, "Tóngzhì, wǒ zhēn xiǎng fú bīngyì, nǐ gěi wǒ xiǎng ge gānfǎ ba." Nàge gānbù xiǎngle

儿，就说，“现在我没有办法帮你。明年一月到三月之间你再来。也许那个时候我有办法帮你。”

小孙是北京饭店的服务生。他的问题最大，他对服兵役很有积极性，可是他的外祖父是地主，组织认为他以前剥削过农民，是一个反革命分子。他的父亲从一九三八年到一九四九年在反动分子的外交部工作过，是礼宾司的一个科长，组织认为他也是反革命分子。干部说小孙的成分很不好，不许他参军。小孙觉得他自己不是地主、也不是反动分子或是反革命分子，组织应当让他入伍。干部说，如果你家里的人是没改造好的地主，什么的，你就不可以参军，没有例外。小孙听了以后就说，“参军是一种权利，为什么你们不给我这个权利？”干部说，“这种权利是国家给你的。国家可以给你，也可以不

yīhuǐr, jiù shuō, "Xiànzài wǒ méiyǒu bànfǎ bāng nǐ. Míngnián Yīyuè dào Sānyuè zhījiān nǐ zài lái. Yěxǔ nàgè shíhòu wǒ yǒu bànfǎ bāng nǐ."

Xiǎo Sūn shì Běijīng Fàndiàn de fúwùshēng. Tāde wèntí zuì dà, tā duì fú bīngyì hěn yǒu jījǐxìng, kěshì tāde wàizǔfù shì dìzhǔ, zǔzhī rènwei tā yǐqián bōxuēguo nóngmín, shì yíge fǎngémìng fènzǐ. Tāde fùqīn cóng Yījiūsānbānián dào Yījiūsìjiǔnián zài fǎndòng fènzǐ de wàijiāobù gōngzuòguo, shì Lǐbīnsī de yíge kēzhǎng, zǔzhī rènwei tā yěshì fǎngémìng fènzǐ. Gàn bù shuō Xiǎo Sūn de chéngfèn hěn bùhǎo, bùxǔ tā cānjūn. Xiǎo Sūn juéde tā zìjǐ búshì dìzhǔ, yě búshì fǎndòng fènzǐ huòshì fǎngémìng fènzǐ, zǔzhī yīngdāng ràng tā rùwǔ. Gàn bù shuō, rúguǒ nǐ jiālǐ de rén shì méi gǎizào hǎo de dìzhǔ, shénmede, nǐ jiù bùkěyǐ cānjūn, méiyǒu lìwài. Xiǎo Sūn tīngle yǐhòu jiù shuō, "Cānjūn shì yìzhǒng quánlì, wèishénme nǐmen bùgěi wǒ zhège quánlì?" Gàn bù shuō, "Zhèzhǒng quánlì shì guójiā gěi nǐ de. Guójiā kěyǐ gěi nǐ, yě kěyǐ bùgěi nǐ." Xiǎo Sūn tīngle yǐhòu, shénme

给你。”小孙听了以后，
什么话也没说，就离开了。

小李虽然是中国人，
可是他是在外国生的、在
外国长大的。十四岁的时
候才回到中国来，所以说
的中国话很不好、中国字
也不太会写。他报到填表
的时候还得请干部帮忙。
干部觉得如果让他受训，
对国家、对他自己都没有
好处，因为他没有办法学
习，最后他们决定把他免
役。小李也很不高兴。他
说他入了伍以后，可以请
干部教他中文。干部说他
们没有义务教他中文，要
是他想多学习中文，他应
该请组织派他到学校去念
书。解放军的三个军种没
有教中文的学校。

huà yě méishuō, jiù líkāile.

Xiǎo Lǐ suīrán shì Zhōngguó rén,
kěshì tā shì zài wàiguó shēngde, zài
wàiguó zhǎngdàde. Shísìsuì de shíhou
cái huídao Zhōngguó lái, suǒyǐ shuōde
Zhōngguó huà hěn bùhǎo, Zhōngguó zì
yě bú tài huì xiě. Tā bàodào tiánbiǎo
de shíhou hái děi qǐng gānbù bāngmáng.
Gānbù juéde rúguǒ ràng tā shòuxùn,
duì guójiā, duì tā zìjǐ dōu méiyǒu
hǎochù, yīnwei tā méiyǒu bànfǎ xuéxí.
Zuìhòu tāmen juédìng bǎ tā miǎnyì.
Xiǎo Lǐ yě hěn bùgāoxìng. Tā shuō
tā rùle wǔ yǐhòu, kěyǐ qǐng gānbù
jiāo tā Zhōngwén. Gānbù shuō tāmen
méiyǒu yìwù jiāo tā Zhōngwén, yàoshi
tā xiǎng duō xuéxí Zhōngwén, tā
yīnggāi qǐng zǔzhī pài tā dào xuéxiào
qù niànshū. Jiěfàngjūn de sānge
jūnzhǒng méiyǒu jiāo Zhōngwén de
xuéxiào.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS
for
STORY COMPREHENSION

1. With regard to military service, what group of people constitute only one percent?
2. How does the "organization" decide who can serve when there are so many people willing to be inducted?
3. According to the story, what are the two (2) specific types of people rejected by the "organization"?
4. How many young men received draft notices here last June?
5. Where were they supposed to report for injunction?
6. How many failed the physical examination?
7. How many remained after the first (physical) examination?

8. In addition to their occupations, what two (2) other types of information did the young men put on the forms?
9. What two (2) specific items does the story say were decided by the cadre after reviewing the forms?
10. How many people remained after the final stage?
11. Of my five friends, how many were accepted for immediate duty?
12. (1) What was the disposition of Xiao Zhao's case? (2) What did the "organization" consider him to be (with respect to his family)?
13. What is said about Xiao Qian's parents?
14. How old is Xiao Qian's older brother this year?
15. How long did Xiao Qian's older brother serve in the Air Force?
16. What reason did the cadre give Xiao Qian for his deferment?
17. When did the cadre ask Xiao Qian to return for help in joining the service?

MST, Unit 2

18. What is Xiao Sun's present job?
19. What was the occupation of Xiao Sun's maternal grandfather?
20. In the opinion of the "organization," what had the maternal grandfather done?
21. What did the "organization" consider Xiao Sun's maternal grandfather to be?
22. (1) In which department of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs had Xiao Sun's father worked, and (2) what was his position?
23. According to the cadre, where does the right to serve in the Armed Forces come from?
24. What took place when Xiao Li was fourteen years old?
25. When Xiao Li suggested that the cadre teach him Chinese after induction, what reason did the cadre give for refusing?

STORY COMPREHENSION

Answers to Questions

1. With regard to military service, what group of people constitute only one percent?
(draft dodgers OR those who shirk their military service)
2. How does the "organization" decide who can serve when there are so many people willing to be inducted?
([they] use very high standards)
3. According to the story, what are the two (2) specific types of people rejected by the "organization."
(1. physically unfit, and 2. bad "social origin")
4. How many young men received draft notices here last June?
(more than 4000)
5. Where were they supposed to report for induction?
(Tiānjīng)
6. How many failed the physical examination?
(more than 500)
7. How many remained after the first (physical) examination?
(36-3700)
8. In addition to their occupations, what two (2) other types of information did the young men put on the forms?
(1. maternal and paternal grandparents OR family, and 2. [former] work of their parents)

MST, Unit 2

9. What two (2) specific items does the story say were decided by the cadre after reviewing the forms?
(1. deferments, and 2. exemptions)
10. How many people remained after the final stage?
(more than 800)
11. Of my five friends, how many were accepted for immediate duty?
([only] one, [Xiao Zhou])
12. (1) What was the disposition of Xiao Zhao's case? (2) What did the "organization" consider him to be (with respect to his family)?
(1. deferred OR should not serve [at this time], and 2. the only "breadwinner" OR laborer)
13. What is said about Xiao Qian's parents?
(they are both dead)
14. How old is Xiao Qian's older brother this year?
(28 [years old])
15. How long did Xiao Qian's older brother serve in the Air Force?
(4 years [of service])
16. What reason did the cadre give Xiao Qian for his deferment?
(he must finish his studies)
17. When did the cadre ask Xiao Qian to return for help in joining the service?
(next January-March OR between January and March of next year)
18. What is Xiao Sun's present job?
(attendant/waiter/servant at [the Beijing] restaurant)

MST, Unit 2

19. What was the occupation of Xiao Sun's maternal grandfather?
(landlord OR landowner)
20. In the opinion of the "organization," what had the maternal grandfather done?
(exploited the farmers/peasants)
21. What did the "organization" consider Xiao Sun's maternal grandfather to be?
(counterrevolutionary [element])
22. (1) In which department of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs had Xiao Sun's father worked, and (2) what was his position?
(1. Protocol Dept., and 2. section chief)
23. According to the cadre, where does the right to serve in the Armed Forces come from?
(from the nation OR from the country)
24. What took place when Xiao Li was fourteen years old?
([he] returned to China)
25. When Xiao Li suggested that the cadre teach him Chinese after induction, what reason did the cadre give for refusing?
([it was] not their obligation [to teach him Chinese])

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 在中国，要是满了十八岁的年轻人不愿意服兵役，想到乡下去搞生产，行不行？为什么？

Zài Zhōngguó, yàoshi mǎnle shíbāsui de niánqīngrén búyuànyì fú bīngyì, xiǎng dào xiāngxià qù gǎo shēngchǎn, xíng bùxíng? Wèishénme?

2. 在中国，如果一个年轻人的父亲是反革命分子，还没改好，组织会让这个年轻人入伍吗？为什么？

Zài Zhōngguó, rúguǒ yíge niánqīngrén de fùqīn shì fǎngémìngfēnzǐ, hái méi gǎihǎo, zǔzhī huì ràng zhège niánqīngrén rùwǔ ma? Wèishénme?

3. 为什么在中国，地主是坏份子？也不可以参军？

Wèishénme zài Zhōngguó, dìzhǔ shì huàifēnzǐ? Yě bùkěyǐ cānjūn?

4. 请说一说美国年轻人入伍的合格标准跟中国的有什么不一样？

Qǐng shuōyíshuō Měiguó niánqīngrén rùwǔ de hégé biāozhǔn gēn Zhōngguó de yǒu shénme bùyiàng?

5. 听说中国在决定年轻人可以不可以入伍的时候，用的水平很高？为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó zài juédìng niánqīngrén kěyǐ bùkěyǐ rùwǔ de shíhou, yòngde shuǐpíng hěn gāo? Wèishénme?

6. 除了那些体格检查不合格的和残废的人以外，还有哪些人是例外，不许参军？

Chúle nàxiē tǐgé jiǎnchá bùhégedé hé cánfèide rén yǐwài, hái yǒu nǎxiē rén shì lìwài, bùxǔ cānjūn?

7. 新兵入伍以前，为什么需要填表？请说一说填表的时候都写些什么？

Xīnbīng rùwǔ yǐqián, wèishénme xūyào tiánbiǎo? Qǐng shuōyishuō tiánbiǎo de shíhou dōu xiěxiē shénme?

8. 请说一说在美国服兵役的好处在哪里？

Qǐng shuōyishuō zài Měiguó fú bīngyì de hǎochù zài nǎlǐ?

9. 请说一说“缓役”是什么意思？什么人可以请组织给他缓役？

Qǐng shuōyishuō "huǎnyì" is shénme yìsi? Shénme rén kěyǐ qǐng zǔzhī gěi tā huǎnyì?

10. 过去是反动分子或是反革命分子的人，有没有机会服兵役？为什么？

Guòqù shì fǎndòngfēnzǐ huòshì fǎngémìngfēnzǐ de rén, yǒu méiyǒu jīhuì fú bīngyì? Wèishénme?

11. 你能不能简单地说一说，中国每年有九百万满了十八岁的年轻人，只有百分之十的人可以入伍。为什么？

Nǐ néng bùnéng jiǎndānde shuōyishuō, Zhōngguó měinián yǒu jiǔbǎiwàn mǎnle shíbāsùì de niánqīngrén, zhǐyǒu bǎifēnzhīshí de rén kěyǐ rùwǔ. Wèishénme?

12. 请说一说“免役”跟“缓役”有什么不一样。要是你是一个残废的人，你需（要）不需要请组织给你办缓役？为什么？

Qǐng shuōyishuō "miǎnyì" gēn "huǎnyì" yǒu shénme bùyiàng. Yàoshi nǐ shì yíge cánfèide rén, nǐ xū(yào) bùxūyào qǐng zǔzhī gěi nǐ bàn huǎnyì? Wèishénme?

13. 要是新兵入伍以后才发现他的成分有问题，比方说，小张的祖父过去给反动分子做过事，组织会怎么办。

Yàoshi xīnbīng rùwǔ yǐhòu cái fāxiàn tāde chéngfèn yǒu wèntí,
bǐfāng shuō, Xiǎo Zhāng de zǔfù guòqu gěi fǎndòngfēnzǐ zuòguo shì,
zǔzhī huì zěnmebàn.

14. 有人说志愿兵制有很多坏处，美国现在反倒用志愿兵制是什么原因？

Yǒu rén shuō zhìyuànbingzhì yǒu hěnduō huàichu, Měiguó xiànzài fǎndào
yòng zhìyuànbingzhì shì shénme yuányīn?

15. 请你说一说中国人怎么看服兵役这件事，年轻人愿意不愿意入伍？为什么？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō Zhōngguó rén zěnmekàn fú bīngyì zhèjiàn shì,
niánqīngrén yuànyì búyuànyì rùwǔ? Wèishénme?

16. 大学还没毕业的学生可不可以免役为什么？

Dàxué hái méi bìyè de xuésheng kě bùkěyǐ miǎnyì wèishénme?

17. 在中国长大的外国人，组织许他受训练吗？

Zài Zhōngguó zhǎngdà de wàiguorén, zǔzhī xǔ tā shòu xùnliàn ma?

18. 在中国如果一个人的父母都有工作，可是他是唯一的
孩子，他需不需要入伍？为什么？

Zài Zhōngguó rúguǒ yíge rén de fùmǔ dōu yǒu gōngzuò, kěshi tā shì
wéiyíde háizi, tā xū bùxūyào rùwǔ? Wèishénme?

19. 请你讲一讲中国逃避兵役的人多不多？为什么？

Qǐng nǐ jiǎngyijiǎng Zhōngguó táobì bīngyì de rén duōbùduō? Wèishénme?

20. 刨去了地主、反革命分子、反动分子这些人以外，还有
那些人不能参军？为什么？

Páoquēle dìzhǔ, fǎngémìngfēnzǐ, fǎndòngfēnzǐ zhèxiē rén yǐwài, hái
yǒu nǎxiē rén bùnéng cānjūn? Wèishénme?

21. 在中国虽然服兵役是每一个年轻人的权利，组织可以不给他这个权利？为什么？

Zài Zhōngguó suīrán fú bīngyì shì měiyíge niánqīngrén de quánlì, zǔzhī kěyǐ bùgěi tā zhège quánlì? Wèishénme?

22. 请你说一说，你受基本训练的时期，除了工作和学习以外，剩下的时间（你）都作什么？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō, nǐ shòu jīběn xùnlìàn de shíqī, chúle gōngzuò hé xuéxí yǐwài, shèngxiàde shíjiān (nǐ) dōu zuò shénme?

23. 请你说一说，接到组织的通知到入伍报到的时期中，你在家作什么？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō, jiēdào zǔzhī de tōngzhī dào rùwǔ bàodào de shíqī-zhōng, nǐ zài jiā zuòshénme?

24. 请你谈一谈，如果父亲是地主，跟儿子有什么关系？为什么组织不让他参军？

Qǐng nǐ tányitán, rúguǒ fùqīn shì dìzhǔ, gēn érzi yǒu shénme guānxi? Wèishénme zǔzhī búràng tā cānjūn?

25. 如果一个士兵的身体好、成分好、工作成绩又好，他可不可以要组织分派他到想去的军种服兵役？

Rúguǒ yíge shìbīng de shēntǐ hǎo, chéngfèn hǎo, gōngzuò chéngjī yòu hǎo, tā kě bùkěyǐ yào zǔzhī fēnpài tā dào xiǎngqùde jūnzhǒng fú bīngyì?

26. 听说美国已经没有缓役跟免役的问题了，为什么？

Tīngshuō Měiguó yǐjīng méiyǒu huǎnyì gēn miǎnyì de wèntí le, wèishénme?

27. 请你说一说中国的地主跟反革命分子应该怎么改造？
要用多长的时期？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō Zhōngguó de dìzhǔ gēn fǎngémìngfēnzǐ yīnggāi zěnmē
gǎizào? Yào yòng duōchángde shíqī?

28. 你们宿舍里边儿的学生住满了的时候最多可以有多少人？

Nǐmen sùshè lǐbianr de xuéshēng zhùmǎnle de shíhòu zuǐduō kěyǐ yǒu
duōshǎo rén?

29. 听说美国的教育制度很好，可是还有百分之十左右的人
不认识字？为什么？

Tīngshuō Měiguó de jiàoyù zhìdù hěn hǎo, kěshì hái yǒu bǎifēnzhīshí
zuǒyòude rén búrènshì zì? Wèishénme?

30. 听说在中国要是一个年轻人的中文太差，就是别的都
合格也不能服兵役，为什么？

Tīngshuō zài Zhōngguó yàoshi yíge niánqīngrén de Zhōngwén tài chā,
jiùshi biéde dōu hégé yě bùnéng fú bīngyì, wèishénme?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. Before beginning exercise, everyone must have a physical examination. The reason for this policy is that the last time we exercised, many people became ill.

2. Doing military service is often boring, and is also sometimes embarrassing. The people with bad "social origins" are often the ones who can work best.

3. Not only are those with bad "social origins" exempted from military service, but also the very rich. However, the reasons for exemption are not the same.

4. Those who qualify may graduate a little earlier. The remainder of the students must wait until 1 April, and only then may they graduate.

5. In California, the landlords are very impolite...you must give them as much money as they want, otherwise they will not rent out their buildings.

MST, Unit 2

6. Mathematics is very difficult to learn. For example, yesterday my teacher asked me: "If you have ten apples, and subtract three, what is the remainder?" I didn't know, and besides, I don't like eating apples.
7. This test is really difficult. Seventy percent is not up to standard (passing), and neither is 80 percent. In order to qualify, you must have 95 percent.
8. In regard to the spare time of Americans, watching television constitutes approximately 75 percent (of the time).
9. Who works in the factory? Everyone works, there are no exceptions. Our policy here is: If you can eat, you can work.
10. The reason my younger brother was deferred the first time was because he could not read or write; the second time was because he often became ill. The third time was because he said that he was disabled. Last time, the reason was that he went to Canada to live.
11. In 1972, this college had two types of students--exempted and deferred. There was no other type of student here.
12. In California, when you reach 16 (years of age), you can drive a car. When you reach 18, you can drink beer. When you reach 21, only then can you drink liquor. It's really pitiful.

13. Every three months, there are many students who come here to study Chinese. However, only approximately 50 percent will graduate.

14. Yesterday, I asked my landlord to buy a few bottles of beer for me. Of the six bottles he bought, I drank five and then got sick. After throwing up, I saw that there was still one bottle remaining.

15. When they are small (young), some people have bad "social origins." After graduating from college, these people are often called the "reactionary" element. But only the name that they are called has changed.

16. Last year, more than one million Americans bought the "People's Daily (newspaper)." This year there were not that many. The great majority of those who read the "People's Daily" were notified to report for military service. The remainder went to Canada.

17. My old friend was in an automobile accident last week. His doctor says that he will be disabled for more than six weeks.

18. Our modern conscription system is very good. Only those people with good "social origins" can do military service. I really don't know if that situation is good or not, but I have heard that it is.

19. Some people consider sick people to be disabled, and others consider disabled people to be sick. On the contrary, disabled people are usually very industrious. They ordinarily do not shirk their work.

20. Even if the people of the reactionary elements are qualified, they are exempted from military service. This is because the "organization" considers them to be of bad "social origins."
21. In addition to the counterrevolutionary elements, there are reactionary elements in this city. We consider both of them to have bad "social origins."
22. Every regulation (rule) has an exception. For example, the "organization" says that everyone must have a physical examination, but those people who have a good "social origin" are often exempted.
23. Which of these two political elements do you think is the most glorious, the reactionary element or the counterrevolutionary element?
24. Our organization has only one bad point. Because all of us have already reached 65 (years of age), we never do anything. We never have dances, or picnics, etc. It's as if we were all disabled.
25. Those who shirk their obligations often lose face. When they should be working, they are playing chess, reading books, watching movies, etc. This is really a pity.
26. Reformed counterrevolutionary elements and reformed reactionary elements often work well together. Perhaps this is because they are both reformed, and therefore their previous situations were equally bad.

27. His health is very good. I think that even if he becomes sick, he cannot possibly be disabled. Besides, he has a physical examination each month.

28. The ingredients for making this cake are very simple. It is $\frac{1}{3}$ flour, $\frac{1}{3}$ sugar, and $\frac{1}{3}$ milk. This kind of cake really tastes good, but I'm afraid that if I eat too much, I'll soon get sick.

29. In America, the people's rights are very important. They are all guaranteed by the government. The situation in foreign countries is sometimes different.

30. People who have many rights also have many obligations. If they want to protect their rights, then they must recognize their obligations. Otherwise, they will soon have no rights.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Chéngfèn bùhǎo huòshì tǐgé jiǎnchá bùhége de niánqīngrén bùkéyi fú bīngyì, tāmen duōbàn bèi fēnpàidào xiāngxià qù gāo shēngchǎn.
2. Zài Zhōngguó, rénmin yǒu hěn duō quánlì. Bǐfāngshuō, yǒu gōngzuò de quánlì; yǒu shòu jiàoyù de quánlì děngděng. Fú bīngyì yě shì yìzhǒng quánlì.
3. Tīngshuō Měiguóde bīngyì zhìdù méiyǒu gǎiwéi zhīyuàn bīngyìzhì yǐqián, zài dàxué niànshū de niánqīngrén keyi huānyì, duì buduì?
4. Suǐrán dàbùfen de Zhōngguó niánqīngrén dōu juéde fú bīngyì shì yìzhǒng guāngróng, kěshì yě yǒu xiǎobùfen de rén bùxǐhuan qù.
5. Tǐgé jiǎnchá bùhége de rén, jiù shì tāde chéngfèn fēicháng hǎo, zǔzhǐ yě búhuì xǔ tā rùwǔ.
6. Yīwù bīngyìzhì de huàichu shì bùguǎn nǐ yuànyì búyuànyì cānjūn, mǎnle shíbasuì de rén dōu huì jiēdào zǔzhǐ de tōngzhǐ, jiào nǐ qù bàodào.

7. Rúguǒ nǐde liǎngtiáo tuǐ dōu huàile, huòshi yìtiáo tuǐ huàile, xíngdòng hěn bùfāngbian, zǔzhǐ jiù rènwéi nǐ shì cánfèide rén, kéyì miǎnyì.
8. Xiǎo Zhāng yìjiārén dōu wèi rénmín fúwù. Tā fùqīn shì rénmín gōngshè de fùzérén; dàgē zài dǎngwěihuì zuòshì; èrgē dānrèn hǎijūn bùduì de gānbù; tā zìjǐ ne, shāngge yuè cái rùwǔ shòu jībēn xùnqiān.
9. Zài Zhōngguó, rúguǒ nǐde fùqīn shì dìzhǔ, huòshi gěi fāndòngpài zuòguo shì, nǐ jiùshì chéngfèn bùhǎo de rén, búdàn bùkéyì fú bīngyì, yě bùxǔ niàn dàxué.
10. Páoqù gèzhǒng bùnéng rùwǔ de yuányīn. néng dào jiěfàngjūn qùde dōu shì shēntǐ hǎo, chéngfèn hǎo, zuòshì yòu yǒu jíjíxìng de niánqīngrén.
11. Bùxǐhuan cānjūn de rén shuō, jībēn xùnliàn tài kǔ, rùwǔ de shíqǐ tài cháng. Yàoshi kěnéng de huà, tāmen xiāng táobǐ fú bīngyì.
12. Zhōngguó de rénkǒu zài shìjièshang shì zuì duōde, suǒyǐ měinián mǎnle shíbāsuì yīnggāi fú bīngyì de rén yě zuì duō, chābùduō yǒu bā, jiǔbǎiwàn rén.
13. Shēntǐ tài gāo huòshi tài ǎi de rén, suīrán méiyǒu qítāde máobīng, zǔzhǐ yě bùhuì xǔ tā fú bīngyì.

14. Yìbānde shuō, yǒu hǎojǐzhǒng qíngxíng kényì ràng nǐ huānyì. Bǐfāngshuō, nǐ jiēdao rùwǔ tōngzhǐ de shíhou bìngde hěn zhòng, bùnéng láodòng, huòshi zhèngzai dàxué xuéxí, huòshi nǐ shì jiāli wéiyìde láodònglǐ, dēng kényì qǐng zǔzhǐ gěi nǐ huānyì.
15. Yìbānde shuō, Zhōngguó jūnduì de shuǐpíng bǐjiào gāo, érqǐě cānjūn shì yìzhǒng àiguó de xíngdòng. Suǒyì, Zhōngguóde niánqīngrén dōu xǐhuan fú bīngyì.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate" because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 2

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Paul Read and Jiǎn Xīndēng continue their conversation begun in the last unit.

1. R: Is anyone exempted from military service in China?

J: 有, 不少。
Yǒu, bùshǎo.

2. R: Are disabled persons exempted?

J: 入伍以前人人都得检查身体。看看合格不合格。
Rùwǔ yǐqián rén rén dōu děi jiǎnchá shēntǐ. Kànkàn hégé bùhége.

3. R: Are college students exempted?

J: 大学学生不能免役, 只能缓役。还有病人也可以缓役。
Dàxué xuésheng bùnéng miǎnyì, zhǐnéng huǎnyì. Háiyǒu bìngrén yě kěyǐ huǎnyì.

4. R: What percent of China's population is inducted each year?

J: 大约百分之十。
Dàyuē bǎifēnzhīshí.

5. R: How many Chinese turn 18 each year?

J: 差不多九百万。
Chābùduō jiǔbǎiwàn.

6. R: Then each year about 900,000 are inducted into the Armed Forces. Is this correct?

J: 对了。
Duìle.

7. R: Of the 9 million who turn 18 each year, how many fail the physical examination?
J: 有百分之六十到七十不能合格。
Yǒu bǎifēnzhī liùshí dào qīshí bùnéng hégé.
8. R: Who constitutes the other 20-30%?
J: 剩下的是因为成份不好。
Shèngxiàde shì yīnwèi chéngfèn bùhǎo.
9. R: What do you mean by bad "social origins?"
J: 比方说, 地主和反革命份子。
Bǐfāng shuō, dìzhǔ hé fǎngémìng fēnzǐ.
10. R: Are there any other grounds for excluding someone from military service?
J: 有, 如果得养家或是只有他一个男孩子, 那么就可以免役了。
Yǒu, rúguǒ děi yǎngjiā huòshì zhǐyǒu tā yíge nánháizi, nàme jiù kěyǐ miǎnyì le.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Two young members of the Red Star People's Commune in Hubei are discussing military service. Both have been rejected for military service for various reasons, and are discussing their experiences during the induction procedure.

Role 1: Xiǎo Mǎ received his induction notice two weeks ago to report to Nanjing for induction. He had hoped to be inducted into the Army, because the Army's term of service was shorter than that of the other services, and he wanted to return to his studies at Beijing University as soon as possible. After reporting to Nanjing, he passed the physical examination. Following the physical, he talked to a comrade for several hours. The comrade told him that he could be deferred if he wished to continue his studies, but when Xiao Ma told the comrade that he was the family's sole breadwinner, the comrade told him that he could be exempted by the "organization." Xiao Ma thought that this situation would be best, so he wrote a letter to the "organization." Two weeks after writing the letter, he received a notice from the "organization" saying that he had been exempted, so he was very happy.

Role 2: Xiǎo Dèng just turned 18 six months ago. Five months ago he received his induction notice, and was very happy. He felt that serving in the Armed Forces was a great honor for his family, so he reported for induction the same day that he received the notice. He considered serving in the Armed Forces to be both an obligation and a right, so he was very unhappy when he did not pass the physical examination. The doctor told him that his health was very bad, and he was afraid that it could not be improved. If Xiao Deng did military service, it was possible he could become disabled. Xiao Deng asked the doctor to help him enter the service, but the doctor said that there was no way. So Xiao Deng returned to the commune. Every-day he writes letters or telephones the "organization," but they say that nobody can help him. Next week, he plans to go to Beijing to talk to someone in the "organization," but he thinks that there is no hope left.

Scenario 2

Situation: Captain Bailey, A Foreign Affairs Officer, has been introduced to Comrade Chen at a party taking place at the American Embassy in Beijing. Since the party has been well underway for some time, the atmosphere between the two individuals concerned is very relaxed and cordial. They have already exchanged the normal courtesies concerning their families, respective jobs, etc. and are about to begin a conversation based on a comparison of the basic conscription systems and service obligations for each of the nations represented by the individuals.

Role 1: Captain Bailey is a military intelligence officer who has just been assigned to the American Embassy in Beijing. He is interested in discovering the number of people being inducted and undergoing training each year, as well as health requirements for those being inducted into the Armed Forces. Further, he wishes to know about the treatment of any members of the reactionary elements or counterrevolutionaries who are inducted. Since the new modernization of China, he has also been instructed by his superiors to find out whether or not China may return to a voluntary enlistment system, and if so, when and why (what are the advantages).

Role 2: Comrade Chen is a high-ranking official of the PLA whose current assignment deals with the induction system for the PLA. He is interested in finding out why the United States changed from a conscription system to a voluntary induction system. He is especially interested in what bad points of the conscription system forced the US away from the prior system, and why the problems were not/could not be dealt with effectively. Comrade Chen is also interested in finding out the lengths of training for officer and enlisted personnel, the service obligations for each of the three major services, and the percentage of eligible 18-year-olds who voluntarily enlist. Of official interest to Comrade Chen is the attitude and training effectiveness of the common American soldier.

Scenario 3

Situation: Comrade Yu has been assigned by the "organization" to visit all of the middle schools in the Beijing vicinity in order to brief the graduating students on their military obligation in the PRC. He has just arrived at a small farming village about 15 kilometers from Beijing, and has met two students on their way home, Comrade Yu has already introduced himself to the two young men, and has decided to talk to them in an effort to "polish" his future presentations.

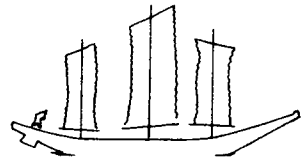
Role 1: Comrade Yú has been informed by his superiors in the "organization" that he should cover such areas as who must serve, how they will be notified, etc. He is especially interested in any questions that the two students may present, as they may point out some factors that he has not as yet considered.

Role 2: Xiǎo Gāo is a student from the farming village. He has lived in this small village all his life, and sees Beijing University as his only hope of escaping from the rural community. His major concern is whether or not he can be deferred until he has a chance to finish his education, or if he can be assigned in the vicinity of Beijing so that he might study at night. He is also concerned about the fact that his grandfather was a landowner, and if he is considered to have a bad "social origin," as it could impact on whether or not he would be acceptable to the military, and hence to Beijing University.

Role 3: Xiǎo Wáng lives outside of the village on a small farm. His father was killed by the Vietnamese in 1979, and he is the sole worker supporting his mother. He has a younger sister, but she is only six years old, and is not able to do all of the work that must be done around the farm. Xiao Wang is very patriotic, and wants very much to enter military service, but he is concerned about his mother's health and the family's ability to get along without him. Further, he cannot decide which branch of service he would prefer to enter, as he knows nothing about the individual service requirements.

UNIT 3

DIALOGUE



1. A: 新兵什么时候入伍?
B: 一般的说, 都是十一月到二月之间。
2. A: 服役期满以后, 如果新兵不想退伍, 他可以请求留下来吗?
B: 如果他有特别的技能, 并且军队需要他的话, 那么他就可以超期服现役; 要不然, 他就得退伍复员。复员军人由组织给他们安排工作。
3. A: 还有别的条件没有?
B: 我不太清楚。我想一定有。
4. A: 怎么有人愿意超期服现役?
B: 一方面, 喜欢中国的人说许多青年认为参军是一种光荣, 也是保卫祖国的好机会。另一方面, 不喜欢中国的人说那是因为军队的生活水平比较高, 所以很多青年入了伍以后, 就不要离开了。
5. A: 你认为是什么原因呢?
B: 我认为第一种看法是对的。第二种看法是阶级敌人的看法。他们造谣言, 打击中国共产党。无论共产党作得多么好, 也不好。这些谣言咱们别信。
6. A: 我们美国军队有现役跟预备役。你们中国呢?
B: 现在我们没有预备役了。可是复员军人都得当民兵。这个跟预备役差不多一样。

1. A: Xīn bīng shénme shíhou rùwǔ?
When are new servicemen inducted?
B: Yìbānde shuō, dōu shì Shíyī-yuè dào Èryuè zhījiān.
Generally speaking, it's between November and February.
2. A: Fúyì qīmǎn yǐhòu, rúguǒ xīn bīng bùxiǎng tuìwǔ, tā keyǐ qǐngqiú liúxiálai ma?
After his term of service has expired, if a new serviceman doesn't want to be discharged, can he request to stay in the service?
B: Rúguǒ tā yǒu tèbiéde jìnéng, bìngqiě jūnduì xūyào tā de huà, nàme tā jiù keyǐ chāoqī fú xiànyì; yàoburán, tā jiù děi tuìwǔ fùyuán. Fùyuán jūnrén yóu zǔzhǐ gěi tāmen ānpái gōngzuò.
If he has a special skill, and moreover if the Armed Forces need him, (then) he can serve beyond his term; otherwise, he has to be discharged and "demobilized." The "organization" will arrange employment for the veterans.
3. A: Hái yǒu biéde tiáojiàn méiyǒu?
Are there any other conditions?
B: Wǒ bú tài qīngchu. Wǒ xiǎng yíding yǒu.
I'm not too clear (about this). (But) I think there must be some.
4. A: Zěnme yǒu rén yuànyì chāoqī fú xiànyì?
How come there are people willing to serve beyond their term?
B: Yìfāngmian, xǐhuan Zhōngguó de rén shuō xǔduō qīngnián rènwéi cān jūn shì yìzhǒng guāngróng, yěshì bǎowèi zǔguó de hǎo jīhuì. Lìng yìfāngmian, bùxǐhuan Zhōngguó de rén shuō nà shì yīnwèi jūnduìde shēnghuó shuǐpíng bǐjiào gāo, suǒyǐ hěn duō qīngnián rùlewǔ yǐhòu, jiù búyào líkāi le.
On the one hand, those who like China say many young people regard joining the Armed Forces as an honor, (and) a good opportunity to defend the fatherland. On the other hand, those who don't like China say that because of the relatively higher standard of living in the Armed Forces, many young people don't want to leave once they have been inducted.
5. A: Nǐ rènwéi shì shénme yuányīn ne?
What do you think the reason is?
B: Wǒ rènwéi dìyìzhǒng kànfǎ shì duìde. Dìèrzhǒng kànfǎ shì jiējí dírén de kànfǎ. Tāmen zào yáoyán, dǎjī Zhōngguó Gōngchǎndǎng. Wúlùn Gōngchǎndǎng zuòde duōme hǎo, yě bùhǎo. Zhèixiē yáoyán zánmen bié xìn.
I think the first kind of view is correct. The second kind of view is the view of a class enemy. They start rumors and attack the Chinese Communist Party. No matter how well the Communist Party does its job, it is (always) bad. Let us not believe these rumors.

6. A: Wǒmen Měiguó jūnduì yǒu xiànyì
gēn yùbèiyì. Nǐmen Zhōngguó
ne?

B: Xiànzài wǒmen méiyǒu yùbèiyì
le. Kěshì fùyuán jūnrén dōu
děi dāng mínbīng. Zhèige gēn
yùbèiyì chàbuduō yíyàng.

Our American Armed Forces have
active duty and reserve duty.
How about China?

We no longer have reserve duty.
But veterans must all serve in
the militia. This is about the
same as reserve duty.

VOCABULARY

保卫	bǎowéi	to defend
并且	bìngqiě	moreover, furthermore
打击	dǎjī	to attack, a blow (figurative)
当	dāng	to be, to become, to serve as
服役期满	fúyì qīmǎn	term of (military) service expires
复员	fùyuán	to "demobilize"*
复员军人	fùyuán jūnrén	veteran, ex-serviceman
阶级敌人	jiējí dírén	class enemy
技能	jīnéng	skill
军队	jūnduì	armed forces, troops
民兵	mínbīng	militia, militiaman
青年	qīngnián	young person, young people
请求	qǐngqiú	request; to request
条件	tiáojiàn	conditions, terms, requirements
特别 (的)	tèbié(de)	to be special
退伍	tuìwǔ	to be discharged (from military service)
无论...也	wúlùn...yě	regardless of, no matter what, how, etc.
现役	xiànyì	active duty
信	xìn	to believe, to believe in
谣言	yáoyán	rumor
一般的说	yībānde shuō	generally speaking
一方面... (另)一方面	yīfāngmian... (lìng) yīfāngmian	on one hand...on the other hand

*This term fùyuán "to demobilize" can refer to an individual serviceman in China who has been discharged from the regular Armed Forces.

预备役	yùbèiyì	reserve duty
造谣(言)	zào yáo(yán)	to start a rumor
之间	...zhījiān	between
祖国	zǔguó	fatherland

STORY COMPREHENSION

我去年到外国去参观他们的军队和兵役制度。一般地说，他们把兵役分成现役和预备役。服役期满的现役军人都进预备役。我们中国没有预备役。现役军人服役期满，退伍复员以后都得当民兵。这个跟外国的预备役军人差不多一样。我觉得我们的兵役制度办得不错。干部工作的时候很有积极性，无论你是新兵还是老兵都对你很好。复员的时候，如果没有工作，组织一定给你安排工作。安排的工作一定跟你的技能有关系。所以复员军人都很高兴。如果你不要退伍复员，你还可以超期服现役。不过那要看情况，要是你的技能是很特别的一种，并且军队需要这种技能，那么组织一定许你留下来，可是有一个条件，你得再服六年兵役。

Wǒ qùnián dào wàiguó qù cānguān
tāmende jūnduì hé bīngyì zhìdù.
Yìbānde shuō, tāmen bǎ bīngyì fēn-
chéng xiànyì hé yùbèiyì. Fúyì qīmǎn
de xiànyì jūnrén dōu jìn yùbèiyì.
Wǒmen Zhōngguó méiyǒu yùbèiyì.
Xiànyì jūnrén fúyì qīmǎn, tuìwǔ
fùyuán yǐhòu dōu dēi dāng mínbīng.
Zhège gēn wàiguóde yùbèiyì jūnrén
chabuduō yíyàng. Wǒ juéde wǒmende
bīngyì zhìdù bànde búcuò. Gānbù
gōngzuò de shíhou hěn yǒu jíjìxìng,
wúlùn nǐ shì xīnbīng háishi lǎobīng,
dōu duì nǐ hěn hǎo. Fùyuán de shíhou,
rúguǒ méiyǒu gōngzuò, zǔzhī yídìng
gěi nǐ ānpái gōngzuò. Ānpái de
gōngzuò yídìng gēn nǐde jìnéng yǒu
guānxi. Suǒyǐ fùyuán jūnrén dōu hěn
gāoxìng. Rúguǒ nǐ búyào tuìwǔ fùyuán,
nǐ hái kěyǐ chāoqī fú xiànyì. Búguò
nà yào kàn qíngkuàng, yàoshi nǐde
jìnéng shì hěn tèbiéde yìzhǒng,
bīngqiě jūnduì xūyào zhèzhǒng jìnéng,
nàme zǔzhī yídìng xǔ nǐ liúxiàlai,

我的朋友老王是解放军陆军的干部。他是十九岁入的伍，上个月满了卅九岁，就复原了。他一共服了二十年的兵役。复员的时候，组织把他分派到沈阳来，在一个博物馆当服务员。他常常到我们这儿来看我。他说他在军队二十年的生活里，每一件事情他都记得。他十九岁在中学念书的时候，有一天接到通知叫他去检查体格，预备入伍，他看了通知，很不高兴，因为他喜欢念书，不喜欢当兵。那个时候中国改府的规矩是无论你是谁也得当兵，没有例外。不过，如果你的身体不好，可以请求免役或是缓役。所以他想了半天，想出来了一个好办法。他跟检查体格的医生说，他希望服兵役，因为那是一个保卫祖国的好机会。

kěshi yǒu yíge tiáojiàn, nǐ dēi zài
fú liùnián bīngyì.

Wǒde péngyou Lǎo Wáng shì
Jiěfàngjūn Lùjūn de gānbù. Tā shì
shíjiǔsuì rùde wǔ, shàngge yuè mǎnle
sānshíjiǔsuì, jiù fùyuán le. Tā
yíngòng fúle èrshínián de bīngyì.
Fùyuán de shíhou, zǔzhī bǎ tā fēnpài
dào Shěnyáng lái, zài yíge bówùguǎn
dāng fúwùyuán. Tā chángcháng dào
wǒmen zhèr lái kàn wǒ. Tā shuō tā
zài jūnduì èrshínián de shēnghuóli,
měi yíjiàn shìqing tā dōu jìdé. Tā
shíjiǔsuì zài zhōngxué niànshū de
shíhou, yǒu yìtiān jiēdao tōngzhī
jiào tā qù jiǎnchá tǐgé, yùbèi rùwǔ,
tā kànle tōngzhī, hěn bùgāoxìng,
yīnwei tā xǐhuan niànshū, bùxǐhuan
dāng bīng. Nàge shíhou Zhōngguó
zhèngfǔ de guīju shì wúlùn nǐ shì
shéi yě dēi dāng bīng, méiyǒu lìwài.
Búguò, rúguǒ nǐde shēntǐ bùhǎo, kěyǐ
qǐngqiú miǎnyì huòshi huǎnyì. Suǒyǐ
tā xiǎngle bàntiān, xiǎngchūlaile
yíge hǎo bànfǎ. Tā gēn jiǎnchá tǐgé
de yīsheng shuō, tā xīwàng fú bīngyì,
yīnwèi nà shì yíge bǎowèi zǔguó de

可是他差不多每个星期都伤风咳嗽，饭也不想吃恐怕不能入伍了。医生说，身体不好没关系，很多青年当兵以前，身体不太好，当了兵以后，天天劳动，身体很快地就好起来了。医生还说，老王这么希望参军，医生一定要帮他忙，让他入伍。医生说完了，老王知道不必再继续谈了，继续谈也没有好处，就站起来走了。

老王又说，他刚进军队的时候，很不喜欢军队的的生活，他跟干部之间的关系搞得也不好。干部已经跟大家说过，没有干部的许可，无论是谁也不可以回家。老王不听干部说的话，常常回家去看父母。干部叫他别这么做，他还是不听，并且造了两个谣言，一个谣言说，因为他没送给干部钱，所以干部不许他回家，另外一个谣言说，百分之八十的干部

hǎo jīhuì. Kěshi tā chābùduō měige xīngqī dōu shāngfēng késòu, fàn yě bùxiǎng chī, kǒngpà bùnéng rùwǔ le. Yīsheng shuō, shēntǐ bùhǎo méiguānxi, hěnduō qīngnián dāngbīng yǐqián, shēntǐ bú tài hǎo, dāngle bīng yǐhòu, tiāntiān láodòng, shēntǐ hěnkuàide jiù hǎoqǐlaile. Yīsheng hái shuō, Lǎo Wáng zhème xīwàng cānjūn, yīsheng yídìng yào bāng tā máng, ràng tā rùwǔ. Yīsheng shuōwánle, Lǎo Wáng zhīdao búbì zài jìxù tánle, jìxù tán yě méiyou hǎochu, jiù zhànqǐlai zǒule.

Lǎo Wáng yòu shuō, tā gāng jìn jūnduì de shíhou, hěn bùxǐhuan jūnduì de shēnghuó, tā gēn gānbù zhījiānde guānxi gǎode yě bùhǎo. Gānbù yǐjīng gēn dàjiā shuōguo, méiyou gānbù de xǔkě, wúlùn shì shéi yě bùkěyǐ huíjiā. Lǎo Wáng bùtīng gānbù shuōde huà, chángcháng huíjiā qù kàn fùmǔ. Gānbù jiào tā bié zhème zuò, tā hái shì bùtīng, bìngqiě zàole liǎngge yáoyán, yíge yáoyán shuō, yīnwei tā méi sòng gěi gānbù qián, suǒyǐ gānbù bùxǔ tā huíjiā, lìngwài yíge yáoyán shuō, bǎifēnzhībāshí de gānbù shì jiējí

是阶级敌人。这两个谣言对干部是很大的打击，很多干部生气了，他们发现这两个谣言是老王造的，所以一方面开会讨论，一方面打电报请求组织派人来处理这件事。过了三、四天，组织派了一个姓毛的干部来跟老王谈话。毛同志问老王为什么造谣言打击干部。老王说，谣言不是他造的。毛同志就说，“王同志啊！我已经跟许多新兵谈过话了，他们都说你就是造谣言的人。他们和干部都认为你不对。新兵都说没有人送给干部钱。你也知道得很清楚，干部里头没有阶级敌人。现在组织知道你造谣言的原因了。你不喜欢服兵役，也不喜欢听干部说的话，自己爱作什么就作什么。如果大家都跟你一样，那么谁服兵役？谁保卫祖国？你走吧，我们不需要像你这种人。”老王这时候才

dírén. Zhè liǎngge yáoyán duì gānbù shì hěndàde dǎjī, hěnduō gānbù shēngqìle, tāmen fāxiàn zhè liǎngge yáoyán shì Lǎo Wáng zàode, suǒyǐ yìfāngmian kāihuì tāolùn, yìfāngmian dǎ diànbào qǐngqiú zǔzhī pàirén lái chǔlǐ zhèjiàn shì. Guòle sān, sìtiān, zǔzhī pàile yíge xìng Máo de gānbù lái gēn Lǎo Wáng tánhuà. Máo Tóngzhì wèn Lǎo Wáng, wèishénme zào yáoyán dǎjī gānbù. Lǎo Wáng shuō, yáoyán búshi tā zàode. Máo Tóngzhì jiù shuō, "Wáng Tóngzhì a! Wǒ yǐjīng gēn xǔduō xīnbīng tánguo huà le, tāmen dōu shuō nǐ jiùshi zào yáoyán de rén. Tāmen hé gānbù dōu rènwéi nǐ búduì. Xīnbīng dōu shuō méiyǒu rén sòng gěi gānbù qián. Nǐ yě zhīdaode hěn qīngchu, gānbùlǐtou méiyǒu jiējí dírén. Xiànzài zǔzhī zhīdao nǐ zào yáoyán de yuányīn le. Nǐ bùxǐhuan fú bīngyì, yě bùxǐhuan tīng gānbù shuōde huà, zìjǐ ài zuò shénme jiù zuò shénme. Rúguo dàjiā dōu gēn nǐ yíyàng, nàme shéi fú bīngyì? Shéi bǎowèi zǔguó? Nǐ zǒuba, wǒmen bùxūyao xiàng nǐ

了解他自己的看法多么不对。他哭着对姓毛的干部说，“毛同志，过去我完全错了。我再也不做那种事了，我请求你再给我一个机会让我继续服兵役。”毛同志觉得老王已经知道过去做的事情多么不对，就告诉他可以留下来。

这件事发生以后，老王工作非常努力，有工夫的时候看马列主义和毛主席的著作，把自己改造得很好。两年以后就当了很多重要的干部。组织认为他是个有干劲的人，全中国的青年都应该向他学习。

zhèzhǒng rén." Lǎo Wáng zhè shíhou
cái liǎojiě tā zìjǐde kànfǎ duōme
búduì. Tā kūzhe duì xìng Máo de
gànbù shuō, "Máo Tóngzhì, guòqù wǒ
wánquán cuòle. Wǒ zài yě búzuò
nàzhǒng shì le, wǒ qǐngqiú nǐ zài
gěi wǒ yíge jīhuì ràng wǒ jìxù fú
bīngyì." Máo Tóngzhì juéde Lǎo Wáng
yǐjīng zhīdao guòqù zuòde shìqing
duōme búduì, jiù gàosu tā kěyǐ
liúxiàlai.

Zhèjiàn shì fāshēng yǐhòu, Lǎo
Wáng gōngzuò fēicháng nǔlì, yǒu
gōngfu de shíhou kàn Mǎliè Zhǔyì hé
Máo Zhǔxí de zhùzuò, bǎ zìjǐ gǎizào de
hěn hǎo. Liǎngnián yǐhòu jiù dāngle
hěn zhòngyào de gànbù. Zǔzhǐ rènwéi
tā shìge yǒu gànjin de rén, quán
Zhōngguóde qīngnián dōu yīnggāi xiàng
tā xuéxí.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS
for
STORY COMPREHENSION

1. What two (2) things did the speaker go abroad to observe last year?
2. According to the story, what type of people all join the reserves in the countries that he visited?
3. How does the speaker feel about the cadres of the Chinese Armed Forces as compared to the reserve military forces of the foreign countries that he observed?
4. What kind of jobs does the "organization" find for veterans?
5. Who can volunteer to serve beyond his term of enlistment and be approved by the "organization"?
6. What condition would the "organization" impose on the volunteer upon approval of his extension of service?
7. How old was Lao Wang when he was inducted?

STORY COMPREHENSION

Answers to Questions

1. What two (2) things did the speaker go abroad to observe last year?
(1. the Armed Forces, and 2. the military service [obligation] system)
2. According to the story, what type of people all join the reserves in the countries that he visited?
(active duty military whose term of service had expired)
3. How does the speaker feel about the cadres of the Chinese Armed Forces as compared to the reserve military forces of the foreign countries that he observed?
(that they are about the same)
4. What kind of jobs does the "organization" find for veterans?
(jobs that are related to their skills)
5. Who can volunteer to serve beyond his term of enlistment and be approved by the "organization?"
(those with special skills [that are needed by the military])
6. What condition would the "organization" impose on the volunteer upon approval of his extension of service?
(that he must serve for 6 years)
7. How old was Lao Wang when he was inducted?
(19 [years old])
8. To what job did the "organization" assign Lao Wang when he retired?
(an attendant [at the Shenyang Museum])

MST, Unit 3

9. What had Lao Wang been doing when he first received his draft notice?
(studying [in middle school])
10. Why was he very unhappy when he received his draft notice?
(because he liked to study OR he did not like being a soldier)
11. In those days, who could ask for an exemption or a deferment?
(those not physically well)
12. He told the doctor giving him his physical examination that he hoped to perform military service. What reason did he give for this?
([it] was a good opportunity to defend the fatherland)
13. What did Lao Wang tell the doctor that he was afraid he could not do?
(he could not be inducted)
14. What did the doctor say about the effects of the military life on those young draftees who had poor health?
(their health improved [very rapidly])
15. Because Lao Wang had so hoped to join the Army, what did the doctor do?
([decided to] help him OR allowed him to be inducted)
16. Why didn't Lao Wang continue the conversation after hearing what the doctor had to say?
(there was no benefit/good point to continuing)
17. What did Lao Wang say was very bad when he first joined the service?
(the relationship between himself and the cadre)
18. What did the cadre tell everyone was necessary in order to return (visit) home?
(the permission [of the cadre])

MST, Unit 3

19. Who did Lao Wang see when he went home?
(his parents)
20. Lao Wang started two rumors. According to the first rumor, why was he not allowed to return (visit) home?
(because he didn't give/send the cadre money)
21. What was the second rumor started by Lao Wang?
(that 80 percent of the cadre were class enemies)
22. When the cadre discovered that these rumors were started by Lao Wang, what two (2) things did they do?
(1. called a meeting AND/OR discussed it, and 2. sent a telegram AND/OR requested that the organization send someone to handle the matter)
23. What did the "organization" do when the incident was brought to their attention?
(sent a cadre [named Mao] to talk to Wang)
24. Before Lao Wang begged Comrade Mao for another chance, what had Comrade Mao decided should be done with Lao Wang?
(he should leave)
25. Two years after this interview, (1) what did Lao Wang become, and (2) what did the "organization" think of him?
(1. [he became a] [very important] cadre, and 2. that he was a very enthusiastic/vigorous/energetic person OR that the youth of China should all study [emulate] him)

8. To what job did the "organization" assign Lao Wang when he retired?
9. What had Lao Wang been doing when he first received his draft notice?
10. Why was he very unhappy when he received his draft notice?
11. In those days, who could ask for an exemption or a deferment?
12. He told the doctor giving him his physical examination that he hoped to perform military service. What reason did he give for this?
13. What did Lao Wang tell the doctor that he was afraid he could not do?
14. What did the doctor say about the effects of the military life on those young draftees who had poor health?
15. Because Lao Wang had so hoped to join the Army, what did the doctor do?
16. Why didn't Lao Wang continue the conversation after hearing what the doctor had to say?
17. What did Lao Wang say was very bad when he first joined the service?

18. What did the cadre tell everyone was necessary in order to return (visit) home?

19. Who did Lao Wang see when he went home?

20. Lao Wang started two rumors. According to the first rumor, why was he not allowed to return (visit) home?

21. What was the second rumor started by Lao Wang?

22. When the cadre discovered that these rumors were started by Lao Wang, what two (2) things did they do?

23. What did the "organization" do when the incident was brought to their attention?

24. Before Lao Wang begged Comrade Mao for another chance, what had Comrade Mao decided should be done with Lao Wang?

25. Two years after this interview, (1) what did Lao Wang become, and (2) what did the "organization" think of him?

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 有人说，美国军队的预备役有一点象中国的民兵，你觉得对吗？为什么？

Yǒu rén shuō, Měiguó jūnduì de yùbèiyì yǒu yídiǎn xiàng Zhōngguó de mínbīng, nǐ juéde duì ma? Wèishénme?

2. 为什么有的青年不喜欢当兵？

Wèishénme yǒude qīngnián bùxǐhuan dāng bīng?

3. 你喜欢当兵吗？为什么？

Nǐ xǐhuan dāng bīng ma? Wèishénme?

4. 听说从前的美国复员军人有很多好处，都是些什么好处？

Tīngshuō cóngqián de Měiguó fùyuán jūnrén yǒu hěnduō hǎochù, dōu shì xiē shénme hǎochù?

5. 到这个学校来念书的学生得有些什么条件？

Dào zhège xuéxiào lái niànshū de xuésheng děi yǒu xiē shénme tiáojiàn?

6. 我有一个朋友告诉我，无论谁也不可以到这来参观你们上课。你觉得他说的话对吗？为什么？

Wǒ yǒu yíge péngyou gàosu wǒ, wúlùn shéi yě bùkěyǐ dào zhèr lái cānguān nǐmen shàngkè. Nǐ juéde tā shuōde huà duì ma? Wèishénme?

7. 如果你不是美国人的话，你愿意在美国军队当兵吗？为什么？

Rúguǒ nǐ búshì Měiguórén dehuà, nǐ yuànyì zài Měiguó jūnduì dāng bīng ma? Wèishénme?

8. 一般的说, 外国人可以在美国服兵役吗? 为什么?
Yìbānde shuō, wàiguórén kěyǐ zài Měiguó fú bīngyì ma? Wèishénme?
9. 为什么青年应该保卫国家?
Wèishénme qīngnián yīnggāi bǎowèi guójiā?
10. 你是哪个军种的? 要是你喜欢__军, 你可以请求他们派你到__军去吗? 为什么?
Nǐ shì nǎige jūnzhǒng de? Yàoshi nǐ xǐhuan __jūn, nǐ kěyǐ qǐngqiú tāmen pài nǐ dào __jūn qù ma? Wèishénme?
11. 请你用中国话讲一讲超期服现役是什么意思?
Qǐng nǐ yòng Zhōngguó huà jiǎngyìjiǎng chāoqī fú xiànyì shì shénme yìsi?
12. 我常常听别人说共产党国家要消灭阶级敌人。阶级敌人是什么意思呢?
Wǒ chángcháng tīng biérén shuō gòngchǎndǎng guójiā yào xiāomiè jiējí dírén. Jiējí dírén shì shénme yìsi ne?
13. 你服了多少时候的兵役了? 什么时候退伍? 退伍以后做什么?
Nǐ fúle duōshǎo shíhou de bīngyì le? Shénme shíhou tuìwǔ? Tuìwǔ yǐhòu zuò shénme?
14. 要是你有特别技能的话, __军每个月会多给一点钱吗? 为什么?
Yàoshi nǐ yǒu tèbié jìnéng dehuà, __jūn měige yuè huì duōgěi yīdiǎn qián ma? Wèishénme?
15. 美国军队的现役跟预备役有什么分别? 请你说一说。
Měiguó jūnduì de xiànyì gēn yùbèiyì yǒu shénme fēnbié? Qǐng nǐ shuōyìshuō.

16. 如果你在军队里造谣言，这件事让干部知道了他们怎么办？

Rúguǒ nǐ zài jūnduìlǐ zào yáoyán, zhèjiàn shì ràng gānbù zhīdaole tāmen zěnmébàn?

17. 听说美国的新兵都是十八、九岁到二十一、二岁之间的青年。那是为什么？

Tīngshuō Měiguóde xīnbīng dōushì shíbā, jiǔsuì dào èrshíyī, èrsuì zhījiān de qīngnián. Nàshì wèishénme?

18. 如果你不喜欢学中国话，你可以不可以请求学校让你学别的外国话？为什么？

Rúguǒ nǐ bùxǐhuan xué Zhōngguóhuà, nǐ kěyǐ bùkěyǐ qǐngqiú xuéxiào ràng nǐ xué biéde wàiguóhuà? Wèishénme?

19. 你小的时候信不信你父母说的话？为什么信/不信？

Nǐ xiǎode shíhou xìn búxìn nǐ fùmǔ shuōde huà? Wèishénme xìn/búxìn?

20. 听说在美国有的青年因为要学习一种新技能，所以才参军。这是谣言吧？为什么？

Tīngshuō zài Měiguó yǒude qīngnián yīnwei yào xuéxí yīzhǒng xīn jìnéng, suǒyǐ cái cānjūn. Zhèshì yáoyán ba? Wèishénme?

21. 你退伍以后，参加不参加预备役？为什么？

Nǐ tuìwǔ yǐhòu, cānjiā bùcānjiā yùbèiyì? Wèishénme?

22. 你什么时候服役期满？在美国有没有很多人服役期满以后，请求超期服现役？为什么？

Nǐ shénme shíhou fúyì qīmǎn? Zài Měiguó yǒu méiyǒu hěnduōrén fúyì qīmǎn yǐhòu, qǐngqiú chāoqī fú xiànyì? Wèishénme?

23. 现在美国军队一共有多少人？__军占百分之几？
Xiànzài Měiguó jūnduì yígòng yǒu duōshǎorén? __jūn zhàn bǎifēnzhījǐ?
24. 住在美国的外国青年有没有保卫美国的义务？为什么？
Zhùzài Měiguó de wàiguó qīngnián yǒu méiyǒu bǎowèi Měiguó de yìwù?
Wèishénme?
25. 在美国有很多人每年检查一次体格，你们每年也检查一次吗？有什么好处？
Zài Měiguó yǒu hěnduōrén měinián jiǎnchá yíci tǐgé, nǐmen měinián yě jiǎnchá yíci ma? Yǒu shénme hǎochù?
26. 为什么有的青年逃避兵役？
Wèishénme yǒude qīngnián táobì bīngyì?
27. 如果美国还用征兵制的话，你觉得一个家庭的唯一的儿子，可以免役吗？为什么？
Rúguǒ Měiguó hái yòng zhēngbīngzhì dehuà, nǐ juéde yíge jiātíngde wéiyíde érzi, kěyǐ miǎnyì ma? Wèishénme?
28. 你认为身体不好的人应该免役还是应该缓役？为什么？
Nǐ rènwéi shēntǐ bùhǎode rén yīnggāi miǎnyì háishi yīnggāi huǎnyì?
Wèishénme?
29. 我们学校有没有给残废的人停车的地方？为什么？
Wǒmen xuéxiào yǒu méiyǒu gěi cánfèide rén tíngchē de dìfang?
Wèishénme?
30. 你想中国的地主或是反革命分子都喜欢造谣言吗？要是他们造谣言，我们应该怎么样打击他们？
Nǐ xiǎng Zhōngguóde dìzhǔ huòshì fǎngémìng fēnzǐ dōu xǐhuan zào yáoyán ma? Yàoshi tāmen zào yáoyán, wǒmen yīnggāi zěnmeyàng dǎjī tāmen?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. There are many people who think that serving as a militiaman is better than serving in the (regular) Armed Forces. Generally speaking, the term of service is comparatively long, but the work is very easy.
2. Defending the fatherland is a very important obligation. Sometimes it requires (needs) special skills, but generally speaking, everyone can qualify.
3. Regardless of the type of special skill you have, you must do military service. After completing three years of military service, then you must join the reserves or stay in service. You cannot be immediately "demobilized."
4. Serving as a militiaman has many good points. From Monday to Friday, you can do your ordinary work or go wherever you like. Then on Saturday and Sunday, you must receive basic military training.
5. When you see an (auto) accident, you should immediately request an ambulance to come and help those who were injured. Otherwise, it would be very easy for them to become disabled.

6. Young people often enjoy starting rumors. They feel that the more glorious the rumors are, the better. I don't know what relationship age has to starting rumors, but there is certainly some relationship.

7. The terms for working at this airplane manufacturing plant are very simple. You must be patriotic, and you must have been discharged from military duty. Moreover, you must believe in defending the fatherland.

8. If everyone had to defend their own houses and families, then there would be no time to work. Moreover, everyone would always be uneasy; they would feel they could depend on no one.

9. In this school, we have many veterans serving as teachers. This situation is very good, because they understand the military organization here very well. Therefore, they don't have many problems.

10. Do you think that our reserve forces are larger than our active duty forces? I don't know, but I do know that our reserve forces and active duty forces together are smaller than the militia of China.

11. After you are discharged, who decides whether you join the reserves or the militia? Does the "organization" decide, or do you alone decide?

12. In China, being in the militia is like being in the American Armed Forces. Where you live, what you eat, etc., are all decide by the "organization."

13. I would like to interview some of the people who work at the American Consulate, but I don't know anybody. Do you think that you could arrange for me to talk to the ambassador?

14. In our society, people who attack the policies of the Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution are all considered to be class enemies. In America, they are all regarded as great men.

15. Regardless of whether you have been discharged (from military service), you still have an obligation to defend the fatherland. You must continue to strike blows against both the counterrevolutionary elements and the class enemies.

16. The conditions for discharge are not very easy to understand. Not only must you join the militia, but each month you must do eight days of reserve duty. Only when you reach 40 (years of age) can you be "demobilized."

17. Some special matters require special talents. For example, farmers should not work in an airplane factory, and political scientists should not serve as premier.

18. I don't know what to do! On the one hand, the Army has comparatively good training; on the other hand, the Navy has a higher standard of living. I don't know which service I should join.

19. After three years of service, my term of service expires, and then I can be discharged. But there is still a bad point--after being discharged, I must do five years of reserve duty.

20. Our biggest problem at this school is rumors. Sometimes it seems that everyone loves to start rumors, but, generally speaking, nobody likes hearing them.

21. China's land reform movement was very glorious, and also very interesting. The militia, farmers, young people, etc. all participated. Generally speaking, no matter how bad the situation became, they all continued working.

22. Many socialists consider our government's organization to be very bad, so they are always thinking of overthrowing the government. They say they want to "strike a blow" for socialism.

23. If you believe what he says, you are certainly not very intelligent. Generally speaking, 90 percent of what he says is rumor. The remaining 10 percent has no relationship to anything.

24. Between that large department store and the restaurant at the intersection, there is a small building where my friend works. They can arrange for a travel permit for you.

MST, Unit 3

25. Some people consider it impossible for young people to be veterans, but I don't believe this kind of talk. Age has no relationship to the requirements for being a veteran.

26. Of the fruits remaining on that table, I think that only the apples are good looking. The color of these oranges is really bad, and the watermelons are too old. Moreover, only the apples are good to eat.

27. The requirements for demobilization here and in France are really different. In France, 10 percent of the people discharged from active duty must join the reserves, and 50 percent must participate in the militia. Only 40 percent may be demobilized.

28. Defending your own principles is a very special obligation. If you are not willing to defend them, then no one will defend your principles for you.

29. On one hand, it's easy to learn how to understand the Chinese language, but on the other, it is very difficult to learn to speak Chinese. Generally speaking, Chinese is neither too difficult nor too easy to learn.

30. When is your birthday? Isn't it between July and September? When your birthday arrives, I consider it my duty to buy you a few bottles of beer in San Francisco, and then we could use the remaining money to go and see a movie.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Zài Zhōngguó, měinián yǒu hěnduō shìbīng cóng jiěfàngjūn tuīwǔ. Tāmen yǒu zǔzhǐ ānpái dào bùtóngde dìfang qù gōngzuò. Yǒude rén dào xiāngxià qù gāo shēngchǎn, yǒude rén dào mínbīng bùduì qù xùnlìan xīn mínbīng.

2. Zhōngguó gòngchǎndǎng rènwéi měige jiěfàngjūn de zhànshì dōu yīnggāi xuéxí Mǎkèsī, Lièníng Zhǔyì. Suǒyǐ xīnbīng rùwǔ yǐhòu, chūle xùnlìan tāmen jūnshì jìnéng yǐwài, yě jiāo tāmen Mǎlièzhǔyì.

3. Zài jūnduìlǐ zàoyáo de rén duōbàn shì nàxiē méiyǒu gǎizhàohǎo de fǎndòng fènzǐ huòshì fǎngémìng fènzǐ. Tāmen dōushì jiējí dīrén.

4. Tīngshuō dāng mínbīng búxiàng zài fú bīngyì de shíqí, děi zhùzai jūnduìlǐ. Dāng mínbīng kéyǐ zhùzai jiālǐ, kěshì měitiān děi xiàng gǎnbù bàodào shòu liǎngge xiǎoshí de xùnlìan.

5. Fùyuán jūnrén duì guójiā de zérèn hé xiànyì jūnrén yíyàng zhòngyào. Yīnwei tāmen dōu shòuguó jūnshì xùnlìan, suǒyǐ guójiā xūyào de shíhou, tāmen mǎshang kéyǐ cānjiā jūnduì lái bǎowèi guójiā.

6. Zhāng Tóngzhī shuō, zài shèhuìlǐ huòshì jūnduìlǐ fǎndòng fènzǐ dào chù huódòng; dào chù zāoyáo shuō gōngchǎndǎng de huàichū. Wǒmen yào xiǎoxin bié xìn tāmen.

7. Zài jiěfàngjūn bùtóng de jūnzhōnglǐ keyi xuédao bùtóngde jīnéng. Bǐfangshuō, zài kōngjūn keyi xuéxí xiūlǐ fēiji; zài lùjūn keyi xuéxí xiūlǐ qìchē dēngdēng. Yǒude zhèxiē jīnéng, tuīlèwǔ yǐhòu yě hěn yǒuyòng.

8. Dāngbǐng de shíhou, měige yuè de zuǐhòu yìtiān, zūzhǐ dōu huì qǐng nàxiē tóng yíge yuè shēngde shìbǐngmen chīfàn, hējiǔ, zài yíkuàir guò shēngrì.

9. Wǒ yǒu yíge péngyou, tā hěn xǐhuan fú bǐngyì. Liǎngnián yǐqián, tā jiù qǐngqiú zūzhǐ ràng tā dāngbǐng, zūzhǐ shuō tā niánjǐ hái tàixiǎo, bùkěyì rùwǔ. Qùnián tā zài qù qǐngqiú, zūzhǐ gàosu tā, yīnwei tāde chéngfèn bùhǎo, suǒyì bùnéng cānjūn.

10. Zài bùduìlǐ, yàoshi nǐ tīngjian yǒu rén shuō gānbù de huàihuì, búyào suǒbiàn xiāngxìn, yīnwèi zhèzhǒng huàihuà kěnéng shì yáoyán.

11. Xiǎo Wàn zài fú bǐngyì de shíhou yīnwei dǒng yìdiǎnr jīqì, zūzhǐ jiù fēnpài tā dào xiūlǐchǎng qù xuéxí xiūlǐ fēiji. Dào le kuài tuīwǔ de shíhou tā yǐjīng shénme fēiji dōu huì xiūlǐ le. Zūzhǐ gàosu tā guójiā hěn xūyào tāde tèbié jīnéng xīwang tā liúxiālai chāoqǐ fú xiànyì.

12. Tīngshuō tā gēge zài cānjūn yǐqián chūle huì liànshū yǐwài shénme dōu búhuì. Dāngbǐng de shíhou xuéhuìle xiūlǐ qìchē, tuīwǔ yǐhòu, tā gēge jiù kào zhe zhègè jīnéng zài yìjiā dà xiūlǐchǎng zhǎodào yíge shòurù hěn hǎode gōngzuò.
13. Xiǎo Liú zài shòu rùwǔ xùnliàn de shíhou, chángcháng qǐngqiú zǔzhǐ ràng tā huíjiā qù kàn àiren, zǔzhǐ shuō dāngbǐng de shíhou yǐnggāi zhǐ xiāngdào dǎng gēn guójiā, bùkěyì chángcháng huíjiā.
14. Xiǎo Zhào gēn Xiǎo Lǐ zài tóng yíge jūnshì dānwèi fú ìngyì. Xiǎo Zhào hěn huì lǐfà, Xiǎo Lǐ hěn huì xiězì, tāmen liǎngge rén dōu qǐngqiú chāoqǐ fú xiànyì. Jiéguǒ, zǔzhǐ zhǐ bǎ xiǎo Zhào liúxiālai, tōngzhǐ Xiǎo Lǐ tuīwǔ.
15. Jùshuō Zhōngguó mínbǐng de gānbù duōbànr yóu tuīlewǔ de fùyuán jūnrén dānrèn. Zhèxiē rén de niánjì bǐjiào dà, yòu shòuguó hěnduō nián de jūnshì xùnliàn, suóyì hěn shìhé dānrèn zhèzhǒng gōngzuò.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate" because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 3

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Paul Read and Jiǎn Xīndēng continue their conversation from the previous two units.

1. R: At what time of the year are new soldiers inducted?

J: 一般地说, 在每年十一月到第二年的二月之间。在这个时期农业不忙。

Yībānde shuō, zài měinián Shíyīyuè dào dìèrnián de Èryuè zhījiān. Zài zhège shíqī nóngyè bù máng.

2. R: When you have fulfilled your military obligation, can you stay in the Army if you want to?

J: 大多数不要。可是如果军队(有)需要, 那么就可以留下来。

Dàduōshù búyào. Kěshì rúguǒ jūnduì (yǒu) xūyào, nàme jiù kěyǐ liúxiàlai le.

3. R: Are there any other reasons a soldier's desire to serve beyond his term may be considered important enough?

J: 当然。比方说, 一个军人过去的成积、有什么技术、对政府怎么样、还有身体健康不健康, 这些都是决定他能不能留下来的原因。

Dāngrán. Bǐfāng shuō, yíge jūnrén guòqùde chéngjī, yǒu shénme jìshù, duì zhèngfǔ zěnmeyàng, háiyǒu shēntǐ jiànkāng bújiànkāng, zhèxiē dōu shì juéding tā néng bùnéng liúxiàlai de yuányīn.

4. R: What percentage of the PLA would you say is comprised of personnel on extended duty?

J: 我想大约在百分之二十到百分之二十五之间。

Wǒ xiǎng dàyuē zài bǎifēnzhìèrshí dào bǎifēnzhìèrshiwǔ zhījiān.

5. R: Those who do not extend their term of military service, what do they do?

J: 大多数都回家或是做他们原来的工作。有的去公社、有的去工厂。

Dàduōshù dōu huíjiā huòshì zuò tāmen yuánláide gōngzuò. Yǒude qù gōngshè, yǒude qù gōngchǎng.

6. R: Are they all required to join the militia?

J: 是的，祖国的民兵是一个伟大的组织。在民兵里服兵役的人（员）都受过很好的训练。

Shìde, zǔguóde mínbīng shì yíge wěidàde zǔzhī. Zài mínbīnglǐ fú bīngyì de rén(yuán) dōu shòuguò hěn hǎode xùnliàn.

7. R: Why do so many young people want to remain in the military?

J: 中国的青年认为参军和保卫祖国是一种光荣。还有，军队里的生活水平比较高。

Zhōngguóde qīngnián rènwéi cānjūn hé bǎowèi zǔguó shì yízhǒng guāngróng. Háiyǒu, jūnduìlǐ de shēnghuó shuǐpíng bǐjiào gāo.

8. R: I would like to thank you very much for taking the time to explain these things to me. It was very interesting.

J: 不要客气。有工夫请随时过来谈。

Búyào kèqi. Yǒu gōngfu qǐng suíshí guòlai tán.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Two PLA soldiers, who are to be discharged in 30 days, are discussing their future plans and aspirations.

Role 1: Comrade Liú has just completed his third year in the Army, but has become so accustomed to Army life (standard of living), that he wishes to extend his term in service. He was trained by the Army as an auto mechanic, and therefore thinks that he has a good chance to be accepted for extension due to his special skills and the Army's need for good auto mechanics. He has always worked hard at any task assigned him, and his sergeant is always asking him if he would like to become a cadre. However, Comrade Liu is in love with a woman from Shanghai, and wants to get married. He has asked the "organization" for permission three times, but they have always refused because of the woman's bad background (social origins).

Role 2: Comrade Hán has served only six months in the Army so far. He has been told by the cadre that he will be discharged because he is too lazy, and the cadre consider him to be one of the counterrevolutionary elements. Before being inducted into the military, he was a student at Beijing University, and completed two years there. He had hoped to return there following his three-year Army obligation, but he doesn't know whether or not the "organization" will allow him to return to his studies because of his poor military performance and the relationship of the cadre to the national universities. He is afraid that, because he has no special skills, the "organization" may assign him to a commune as a common militiaman, or a simple laborer.

Scenario 2

Situation: Three PLA sailors, who will be discharged within a few months, are discussing their future employment possibilities with each other. All three went through basic training together, and have served together since their entry into the Navy, so they trust each other and respect each others opinions.

Role 1: Comrade Wú worked in the naval hospital for his term of service. All of the cadre say that he not only has worked very hard, but has learned many special skills related to the work of doctors, so they have asked him to extend his military obligation. However, Comrade Wu is generally very dissatisfied with the standard of living in the Navy, and considers his obligation to be to the masses rather than to the Navy. Therefore, he hopes that he will be assigned to a commune in the vicinity of Shanghai to work as a doctor. He has talked to the cadre about this several times, and hopes that the "organization" will be able to make suitable arrangements.

Role 2: Comrade Zhōu has been working as an aircraft mechanic while in the Navy. His father is a manager of an airplane factory in Beijing, and has arranged with the "organization" for Comrade Zhou to be assigned there after his discharge. He wants to work as a factory representative to the PLA Air Force, to try to sell them the airplanes made in his father's factories, but is afraid that his father wants him to work in the factory. He also anticipates problems from the "organization," in that they may assign him to the militia, which would mean that he could not travel around the country at will.

Role 3: Comrade Chén is extremely patriotic and considers the military to be very glorious; however, he has already been told by the cadre that he will not be allowed to extend his time in service because he has no special skills. He has heard that the armed militia in the Shanghai area is very good, and so he hopes that the "organization" or the cadres can arrange for him to be sent there. He hopes to be assigned as a secretary at the Department of Public Safety there so that he can continue to strike blows against the class enemies while also serving in the armed militia.

Scenario 3

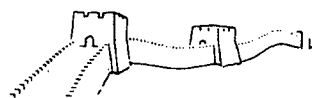
Situation: Two young members of the PLA are discussing their reasons for wanting to stay in the Army beyond their terms of enlistment. The two individuals concerned have never been friends, but have been forced by their working in the same office to be somewhat civil to each other, and they are both somewhat surprised and curious at learning that they both intend to stay in service.

Role 1: Comrade Zhāng grew up in the rural areas of Hubei, and has found the standard of living in the Army to be a pleasant surprise. While growing up, he saw that his father never had time to do anything but work for the landowners. Following the Land Reform Movement, he remembered that he had hoped that things would be different, but they weren't. When he grew up, it was still work as soon as it became light, and sleep as soon as it became dark. He could rest only when the weather was bad. After coming into the military, he had much more free time. He likes to read the newest and most popular magazines, and has already studied economics for more than three years during his free time. Though the cadre sometimes say that he is a class enemy, he thinks that it is because they think that he is always starting rumors. Actually, he just wants to continue to defend the fatherland.

Role 2: Comrade Sūn grew up in Shangdong. Both his father and grandfather have always served in the military, and he considers it to be an obligation to both the fatherland and to his family to extend his service in the military. He considers himself to be very patriotic, and hopes to become a great cadre like his father and grandfather. Though he has just turned twenty-three, he joined the Communist Party over five years ago, and served for six months as a secretary at a state farm near Chengdu. He believes everything that the cadre and the Communist Party says is correct, and knows that they could never start rumors or do anything to help the class enemies and counterrevolutionary elements. His only ambition is to continue to protect the fatherland, reform the class enemies, and help the young people doing military service to understand the meaning of what is said by the Communist Party.

UNIT 4

DIALOGUE



1. A: 听说中国的民兵分成好几类。

B: 是啊！我们不但有普通民兵，也有基干民兵和武装民兵。

2. A: 他们担任什么工作？

B: 平时他们参加生产建设、保护国家的财产和群众的利益、配合正规军担任边防、海防的工作。一方面要防御帝国主义的侵略者，另一方面要协同公安机关消灭阶级敌人和坏分子的活动。

3. A: 一共有多少民兵？

B: 普通民兵有六千万左右、基干民兵有一千五百万左右、武装民兵有五百万。

4. A: 有什么分别？

B: 一般地说，普通民兵的军事训练很少，差不多都是没服过兵役的。基干民兵都是四十岁以下的复员军人。武装民兵是从基干民兵里边挑选出来的，他们还负责武装巡逻和训练其他两类的民兵。

5. A: 我记得从前你说过在中国人人都有服兵役的义务，怎么你刚才说普通民兵都是没服过兵役的？

B: 我恐怕你误会我的意思了。你知道每年征兵的时候得刨去很多人，对不对？那些人当然是没服过兵役的，可是得当民兵。女人也得当民兵。我们平时不征女人服现役。

6. A: 你说平时不征女人, 怎么我看见有女人服兵役呢?

B: 平时女人可以志愿参军。不过, 国家有需要的时候, 可以征那些受过翻译、气象, 等等训练的女人服兵役。

1. A: Tīngshuō Zhōngguó de mínbīng fēnchéng hǎojǐlèi.
I heard that China's militia is classified into quite a few categories.
- B: Shì a! Wǒmen búdàn yǒu pǔtōng mínbīng, yě yǒu jīgān mínbīng hé wǔzhuāng mínbīng.
Yes, indeed. We not only have regular militia, but also a basic militia and an armed militia.
2. A: Tāmen dānrèn shénme gōngzuò?
What work do they undertake?
- B: Píngshí tāmen cānjiā shēngchǎn jiànshè, bǎohù guójiā de cáichǎn hé qúnzhòngde lìyì, pèihé zhèngguǎijūn dānrèn biānfáng, hǎifáng de gōngzuò. Yīfāngmian yào fāngyù dìguózhǔyì de qīnlüèzhě, lìng yīfāngmian yào xiétóng gōngān jīguān xiǎomiè jiējí dírén hé huàifènzǐ de huódòng.
In peacetime, they take part in production and construction, protect the nation's property and the interests of the masses, and coordinate with the Regular Army in carrying out the work of border and coastal defense. On one hand, they have to defend against the imperialistic aggressor, and on the other hand, they have to cooperate with the public security organs in wiping out the activities of class enemies and bad elements.
3. A: Yígòng yǒu duōshǎo mínbīng?
How many militiamen are there altogether?
- B: Pǔtōng mínbīng yǒu liùqiānwàn zuǒyòu, jīgān mínbīng yǒu yìqiānwǔbǎiwàn zuǒyòu, wǔzhuāng mínbīng yǒu wǔbǎiwàn.
The regular militia has about 60 million men; the basic militia has about 15 million men, and the armed militia has 5 million.
4. A: Yǒu shénme fēnbié?
What are the differences?
- B: Yībānde shuō, pǔtōng mínbīng de jūnshì xùnliàn hěn shǎo, chābùduō dōushi méi fúguo bīngyì de. Jīgān mínbīng dōushi sìshísuì yǐxià de fùyuán jūnrén. Wǔzhuāng mínbīng shì cóng jīgān mínbīng lǐbiānr tiāoxuǎn chūlaide, tāmen hái fùzé wǔzhuāng xúnluó hé xùnliàn qítā liānglèi de mínbīng.
Generally speaking, the regular militiamen have very little military training, and almost none of them have ever done military service. The basic militiamen are all veterans under 40 years of age. The armed militiamen are all chosen from the basic militia. They are also responsible for armed patrol and training the other two categories of militia.

5. A: Wǒ jìdé cóngqián nǐ shuōguo
zài Zhōngguó rén rén dōu
yǒu fú bīngyì de yìwù,
zěnmē nǐ gāngcái shuō
pǔtōng mínbīng dōushi méi
fúguo bīngyì de?
- I remember you have said before that everybody in China has an obligation to do military service. How come you just said none of the regular militiamen have done military service?
- B: Wǒ kǒngpà nǐ wùhuì wǒde yìsī
le. Nǐ zhīdao měinián
zhēngbīng de shíhou dēi
páoqù hěnduō rén, duì bú-
duì? Nàxiē rén dāngrán shì
méi fúguo bīngyì de, kěshi
dēi dāng mínbīng. Nǚrén yě
dēi dāng mínbīng. Wǒmen
píngshí bùzhēng nǚrén fú
xiànyì.
- I'm afraid you've misunderstood what I said. You know every year at the time of the draft, a lot of people are eliminated, right? Those people, of course, have never done military service, but they must serve as militiamen. Women must also serve in the militia. In time of peace, we don't draft women to serve on active duty.
6. A: Nǐ shuō píngshí bùzhēng nǚrén,
zěnmē wǒ kànjian yǒu nǚrén
fú bīngyì ne?
- You said women are not drafted in peacetime. How come I've seen women doing military service?
- B: Píngshí nǚrén kěyǐ zhìyuàn
cānjūn. Búguò, guójiā yǒu
xūyào de shíhou, kěyǐ zhēng
nàxiē shòuguo fānyì, qìxiàng,
děngděng xùnliàn de nǚrén
fú bīngyì.
- In peacetime, women may volunteer to join the Armed Forces. However, when our country has a need, we can draft those women who have received training in translation, meteorology, etc.

VOCABULARY

边防	biānfáng	border (frontier) defense
帝国主义	dìguózhǔyì	imperialism
防御	fángyù	defense; to defend against...
分成	fēnchéng	to divide/classify into, to be divided/classified into
公安	gōngān	public security
海防	hǎifáng	coastal defense
好几—	hǎojǐ—	quite a few—
坏分子	huàifēnzǐ	bad element, evildoer
建设	jiànshè	to build, to construct; construction
基干	jīgàn	backbone, primary, basic (for people or organization)
类	lèi	category, kind, type
利益	lìyì	interests, benefit
配合	pèihé	to coordinate
平时	píngshí	time of peace, in time of peace, peacetime
一千万 (数字)	-qiānwàn	"ten million"
侵略者	qīnlüèzhě	aggressor
气象	qìxiàng	meteorology
挑 (选)	tiāo(xuǎn)	to select, to choose
误会	wùhuì	misunderstanding; to misunderstand
武装	wǔzhuāng	to arm, to be armed; arms
协同	xiétóng	to cooperate with, to work in coordination with
巡逻	xúnlúo	to go on patrol; patrol

正 规 军

zhèngguījūn

Regular Army

志 愿

zhìyuàn

to do something at one's own will,
to volunteer

是 啊 ！

shì a!

yes, indeed

STORY COMPREHENSION

我把我们中国的复员军人分成三类。第一类是不喜欢军队生活的。参军以后，退伍越早越好，如果你叫他第二天复员，他一定很高兴。这一类的人非常少。第二类的人认为服兵役是青年的义务。国家要他入伍，就入伍；要他复员，就复员。这一类的人最多，占所有的复员军人百分之八十五。第三类的人不喜欢退伍，希望国家许他超期服现役。组织要他退伍的时候，他很不高兴。这一类的人大约占百分之十三、或是百分之十四。我的朋友老张是第三类的。他十九岁开始在空军服兵役，四年以后服役期满，应该退伍，他请求组织许他超期服现役。组织问他为什么愿意留下来，他说目前帝国主义的侵略者什么时

Wǒ bǎ wǒmen Zhōngguó de fùyuán jūnrén fēnchéng sānlèi. Dìyīlèi shì bùxǐhuan jūnduì shēnghuó de. Cānjūn yǐhòu, tuìwǔ yuèzǎo yuèhǎo, rúguǒ nǐ jiào tā dìèrtiān fùyuán, tā yídìng hěn gāoxìng. Zhè yīlèi de rén fēicháng shǎo. Dìèrlèi de rén rènwéi fú bīngyì shì qīngnián de yìwù. Guójiā yào tā rùwǔ, jiù rùwǔ; yào tā fùyuán, jiù fùyuán. Zhè yīlèi de rén zuì duō, zhàn suǒyǒude fùyuán jūnrén bǎifēnzhībāshiwǔ. Dìsānlèi de rén bùxǐhuan tuìwǔ, xīwàng guójiā xǔ tā chāoqī fú xiànyì. Zǔzhī yào tā tuìwǔ de shíhòu, tā hěn bùgāoxìng. Zhè yīlèi de rén dàyuē zhàn bǎifēnzhīshísān, huòshi bǎifēnzhīshísi. Wǒde péngyou Lǎo Zhāng shì dìsānlèi de. Tā shíjiǔsuì kāishǐ zài kōngjūn fú bīngyì, sìnián yǐhòu fúyì qīmǎn, yīnggāi tuìwǔ, tā qǐngqiú zǔzhī xǔ tā chāoqī fú xiànyì. Zǔzhī wèn tā wèishénme yuànyì liúxiàlai, tā shuō mùqián dìguózhǔyì de qīnlüèzhě shénme

候都会来侵略中国，所以他愿意留下来参加保卫祖国的工作。那时候，空军需要受过气象训练的人，所以组织许他再服四年兵役。过了四年他又得退伍了，他又去跟干部说他还愿意留在解放军，组织许他到陆军去服六年兵役，并且告诉他，这是最后一次，满了六年的时候，他不能再请求超期服现役了。他也同意了。去年十一月他就从陆军退伍了。他在解放军的两个军种一共服了十四年兵役，三十三岁的时候才复员的。

他复员以前组织就已经给他安排了一个工作，那个工作跟他的技能有一点儿关系，我知道得不清楚，因为他不太愿意跟我多讲他目前的工作。我就知道他工作的地方是北京附近的一个飞机场。他离开解放军的时候，干部告诉他去飞机场报到的时候别忘了参加普通民兵，

shíhou dōu huì lái qīnlüè Zhōngguó,
suǒyǐ tā yuànyì liúxiàlai cānjiā
bǎowèi zǔguó de gōngzuò. Nàshíhou,
kōngjūn xūyào shòuguó qìxiàng xùnliàn
de rén, suǒyǐ zǔzhǐ xǔ tā zài fú
sìnián bīngyì. Guòle sìnián, tā yòu
děi tuìwǔ le, tā yòu qù gēn gānbù
shuō tā hái yuànyì liúzai jiěfàngjūn,
zǔzhǐ xǔ tā dào lùjūn qù fú liùnián
bīngyì, bìngqiě gàoosu tā, zhè shì
zuǐhòu yíci, mǎnle liùnián de shíhou,
tā bùnéng zài qǐngqiú chāoqī fú
xiànyì le. Tā yě tóngyì le. Qùnián
shíyīyuè tā jiù cóng lùjūn tuìwǔ le.
Tā zài jiěfàngjūn de liǎngge jūnzhǒng
yíngòng fúle shísiènián bīngyì, sānshí-
sānsuì de shíhou cái fùyuán de.

Tā fùyuán yǐqián zǔzhǐ jiù
yǐjīng gěi tā ànpáile yíge gōngzuò,
nàge gōngzuò gēn tāde jìnéng yǒu
yìdiǎnr guānxi, wǒ zhīdào de bù
qīngchu, yīnwei tā bú tài yuànyì gēn
wǒ duōjiǎng tā mùqiánde gōngzuò.
Wǒ jiù zhīdao tā gōngzuòde dìfang
shì Běijīng fùjīnde yíge fēijīchǎng.
Tā líkāi jiěfàngjūn de shíhou, gānbù
gàoosu tā qù fēijīchǎng bàodào de

因为干部已经把他的名字告诉北京民兵的负责同志了。老张不太了解为什么干部不派他当基干民兵。他听说普通民兵都是没服过兵役，十八、九岁到廿五、六岁的青年。他们受的军事训练也不多；老张自己已经三十多岁了，并且是复员军人。天天跟这些普通民兵在一起，一点儿好处也没有。他和干部谈了很久，干部说，现在复员军人太多，不能都去当基干民兵，所以组织决定把三十一岁到三十三岁的复员军人挑选出来当普通民兵，一方面让这些三十多岁的人了解一下这些没服过兵役的人的情况，一方面让没服过兵役的人向这些复员军人学习正规军的情况，将来可以协同正规军防御帝国主义的侵略者。

shíhou bié wàngle cānjiā pǔtōng
mínbīng, yīnwei gānbù yǐjīng bǎ tāde
míngzi gàosu Běijīng mínbīng de fùzé
tóngzhì le. Lǎo Zhāng bú tài liǎojiě
wènshénme gānbù búpài tā dāng jīgān
mínbīng. Tā tīngshuō pǔtōng mínbīng
dōu shì méi fúguo bīngyì, shíbājiǔsuì
dào èrshiwǔliùsuì de qīngnián. Tāmen
shòude jūnshì xùnlìan yě bùduō; Lǎo
Zhāng zìjǐ wǐjīng sānshiduōsuì le,
bīngqiě shì fùyuán jūnrén. Tiāntiān
gēn zhèxiē pǔtōng mínbīng zài yìqǐ,
yìdiǎnr hǎochù yě méiyǒu. Tā hé
gānbù tánle hěn jiǔ, gānbù shuō,
xiànzài fùyuán jūnrén tài duō, bùnéng
dōu qù dāng jīgān mínbīng, suǒyǐ
zǔzhǐ juéding bǎ sānshiyīsuì dào
sānshisānsuì de fùyuán jūnrén tiāo-
xuǎn chūlai dāng pǔtōng mínbīng,
yìfāngmian ràng zhèxiē sānshiduōsuì
de rén liǎojiě yíxià zhèxiē méi fúguo
bīngyì de rén de qīngkuàng, yìfāng-
mian ràng méi fúguo bīngyì de rén
xiàng zhèxiē fùyuán jūnrén xuéxí
zhèngguījūn de qīngkuàng, jiānglái
kěyǐ xiétóng zhèngguījūn fángyù
dìguózhǔyì de qīnlüèzhě.

老张在飞机场工作差不多快半年了。白天上班。星期一、星期三跟星期六晚上七点到十一点训练新兵；星期二跟星期四晚上七点到十二点配合武装民兵巡逻；星期五晚上六点半到九点半和干部开会讨论怎么注意坏分子的活动、怎么保护群众的利益。星期日不上班，就领导他训练的民兵劳动。有好几个新兵不喜欢劳动，没有干劲，认为民兵受军事训练就够了，不必劳动。老张觉得这种看法不对，所以有一天把他们叫在一起，跟他们讲劳动的问题。他说：“同志们！最近我发现有好几个人对劳动这个问题还是不太明白，认为民兵不必劳动。现在是平时，种白菜、养猪等等的生产工作民兵都应该参加。组织说过，我们得在二十年以内把祖国建设起来。大家想一想，建设祖国一定

Lǎo Zhāng zài fēijīchǎng gōngzuò
chābùduō kuài bànnián le. Báitiān
shàngbān. Xīngqīyī, Xīngqīsān gēn
Xīngqīliù wǎnshàng qīdiǎn dào shíyī-
diǎn xùnliàn xīn mínbīng; Xīngqīèr
gēn Xīngqīsì wǎnshàng qīdiǎn dào
shíèrdiǎn pèihé wǔzhuāng mínbīng
xúnluó; Xīngqīwǔ wǎnshàng liùdiǎnbàn
dào jiǔdiǎnbàn hé gānbù kāihuì tāolùn
zěnmē zhùyì huàifēnzǐ de huódòng,
zěnmē bǎohù qúnzhòng de lìyì.
Xīngqīrì búshàngbān, jiù lǐngdǎo tā
xùnliàn de mínbīng láodòng. Yǒu
hǎojǐge xīn mínbīng bùxǐhuan láodòng,
méiyǒu gānjìn, rènwéi mínbīng shòu
jūnshì xùnliàn jiù gòule, búbì
láodòng. Lǎo Zhāng juéde zhèzhǒng
kànfǎ búduì, suǒyǐ yǒuyìtiān bǎ tāmen
jiàozai yìqǐ, gēn tāmen jiǎng láodòng
de wèntí. Tā shuō: "Tóngzhìmen!
Zuìjìn wǒ fāxiàn yǒu hǎojǐge rén duì
láodòng zhège wèntí hái shì bú tài
míngbai, rènwéi mínbīng búbì láodòng.
Xiànzài shì píngshí, zhòng báicài,
yǎng zhū dēngdēng de shēngchǎn gōng-
zuò mínbīng dōu yīnggāi cānjiā.
Zǔzhǐ shuōguo, wǒmen děi zài èrshí-

需要很多钱，我们劳动生产就可以替国家省钱，省下来的钱就可以用来建设。国家建设得好不好跟群众的利益有关系。咱们是群众的，咱们不应该为了国家的建设劳动吗？咱们不应当为了群众的利益劳动吗？”老张说完了以后，一个二十二、三岁的青年站起来说话了。他说：“张同志，现在我们才了解我们参加生产的目的是，我们误会了组织的意思。我们原来认为组织要我们学习怎么种白菜、养猪什么的，所以都有一点不高兴，现在才知道那些活动都是为了国家的建设、群众的利益。我们一定要把生产建设工作搞好。你放心吧。”老张听了以后，非常高兴。那些新民兵搞生产建设工作搞得很好，有的新民兵还志愿给群众修房子、修路，有的还志愿到广东去担任海防工作或

nián yǐnèi bǎ zǔguó jiànshè qǐlai.
Dàjiā xiǎngyixiǎng, jiànshè zǔguó
yídìng xūyào hěnduō qián, wǒmen
láodòng shēngchǎn jiù kěyǐ tì guójiā
shēng qián, shēngxiàlaide qián jiù
kěyǐ yònglái jiànshè. Guójiā jiànshè
de hǎo bùhǎo gēn qúnzhòng de lìyì
yǒu guānxi. Zánmen shì qúnzhòngde,
zánmen bùyinggāi wèile guójiā de
jiànshè láodòng ma? Zánmen bùying-
dāng wèile qúnzhòngde lìyì láodòng
ma?" Lǎo Zhāng shuōwánle yǐhòu,
yíge èrshìèr, sānsuì de qīngnián
zhànqǐlai shuōhuà le. Tā shuō:
"Zhāng Tóngzhì, xiànzài wǒmen cái
liǎojiě wǒmen cānjiā shēngchǎn de
mùdì le, wǒmen wùhuìle zǔzhǐ de yìsi.
Wǒmen yuánlái rènwéi zǔzhǐ yào wǒmen
xuéxí zěnmē zhòng báicài, yǎng zhū
shénmede, suǒyǐ dōu yǒuyìdiǎn bùgāo-
xìng, xiànzài cái zhīdao nàxiē huó-
dòng dōushi wèile guójiā de jiànshè,
qúnzhòng de lìyì. Wǒmen yídìng yào
bǎ shēngchǎn jiànshè gōngzuò gǎo hǎo.
Nǐ fàngxīn ba." Lǎo Zhāng tīngle
yǐhòu, fēicháng gāoxìng. Nàxiē xīn
mínbīng gǎo shēngchǎn jiànshè gōngzuò

是到东北去担任边防工作。

老张办事这么努力，组织很喜欢他，听说快要派他到南京的公安机关当干部了。

gǎode hěn hǎo, yǒude xīn mínbīng hái
zhìyuàn gěi qúnzhòng xiū fángzi, xiū
lù, yǒude hái zìyuàn dào Guǎngdōng
qù dānrèn hǎifáng gōngzuò huòshi dào
Dōngběi qù dānrèn biānfáng gōngzuò.

Lǎo Zhāng bànshì zhème nǔlì,
zǔzhī hěn xǐhuan tā, tīngshuō kuàiyào
pài tā dào Nánjīng de gōngān jīguān
dāng gàn bù le.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS
for
STORY COMPREHENSION

1. What did I do with China's ex-servicemen?
2. What kind of people are very few in number?
3. What is the percentage of those young people who consider fulfilling one's military duty to be an obligation?
4. What is the percentage of those who hope to stay in the service?
5. What did Lao Zhang do when he was nineteen years old?
6. What reason did he give when his first enlistment of four years was up and he asked the "organization" to let him serve beyond his term?
7. Why did the "organization" let him serve another four years?

8. When the "organization" let him serve six years in the Army, what did they tell him regarding future enlistments?

9. a. When (year/month) was he finally discharged/retired from the Army?

b. How old was he when he was discharged/retired?

10. What kind of job did the "organization" find for him?

11. Why don't I clearly understand his present job?

12. When he left the service, the cadre told him that they had sent his name to someone. Who was it that they sent his name to?

13. Why did the "organization" single out (select) the 31 to 33-year-old ex-servicemen and make them join the "ordinary militia" as opposed to the "basic militia"?

14. a. What did the "organization" expect the people who had never served in the military before to learn from the ex-servicemen?

b. What was the stated purpose of learning from the ex-servicemen?

15. a. On what three days of the week did Lao Zhang train the new militiamen when he was working at the airfield?

b. At what time in the evenings did Lao Zhang begin his training sessions?

16. What did he do on Tuesday and Thursday nights from 7:00 p.m. through 12:00 p.m.?

17. One day a week, Lao Zhang met with the cadre and discussed two (2) specific topics.

a. When (day and time) was this type of meeting held?

b. What were the two (2) specific topics of discussion?

18. What did Lao Zhang do on Sundays?

19. Why did he call quite a few new militiamen together one day and talk to them about doing manual labor?

20. In what two (2) specific types of production work did Lao Zhang say all militiamen should participate (in time of peace)?

21. What did the "organization" expect to see within twenty years?

MST, Unit 4

22. What two (2) specific things did Lao Zhang tell the militiamen they should work for?

23. What two (2) specific things did the militiamen originally think that the "organization" wanted them to learn to do?

24. Describe one (1) of the types of work for which the militiamen volunteered following Lao Zhang's talk (1 of 4 possible).

25. What assignment in Nanking is the "organization" going to give Lao Zahng?

STORY COMPREHENSION
Answers to Questions

1. What did I do with China's ex-servicemen?
(divided them into three categories)
2. What kind of people are very few in number?
([those who] don't like military life)
3. What is the percentage of those young people who consider fulfilling one's military duty to be an obligation?
(85 [percent])
4. What is the percentage of those who hope to stay in the service?
(13 [percent] OR/TO 14 [percent])
5. What did Lao Zhang do when he was nineteen years old?
(entered Air Force)
6. What reason did he give when his first enlistment of four years was up and he asked the "organization" to let him serve beyond the term?
(the imperialist aggressors could come to invade China at any time OR [he wanted to remain to participate in the work of] protecting the fatherland)
7. Why did the "organization" let him serve another four years?
([because the] Air Force needed meteorologists [those who had undergone meteorology training])
8. When the "organization" let him serve six years in the Army, what did they tell him regarding future enlistments?
([that] this was the last time OR after his six years [in the Army] were up, he could not request reenlistment)

9. a. When (year/month) was he finally discharged/retired from the Army?
(last year, [in] November)
- b. How old was he when he was discharged/retired?
(33 [years old])
10. What kind of job did the "organization" find for him?
([it is] related to his [prior] skills)
11. Why don't I clearly understand his present job?
([because] he's not willing to talk about it [anymore])
12. When he left the service, the cadre told him that they had sent his name to someone. Who was it that they sent his name to?
([the] comrade responsible for the [Beijing] militia)
13. Why did the "organization" single out (select) the 31 to 33-year-old ex-servicemen and make them join the "ordinary militia" as opposed to the "basic militia?"
([because] there were too many ex-servicemen AND/OR not all of the ex-servicemen could join the basic militia)
14. a. What did the "organization" expect the people who had never served in the military before to learn from the ex-servicemen?
(the conditions/situation of the Regular Army)
- b. What was the stated purpose of learning from the ex-servicemen?
([in order to] coordinate/work in cooperation with the Regular Army in defending [the nation against the imperialistic aggressors])
15. a. On what three days of the week did Lao Zhang train the new militia-men when he was working at the airfield?
(Mondays, Wednesdays, and Saturdays)
- b. At what time in the evenings did Lao Zhang begin his training sessions?
(7:00 [p.m.])

MST, Unit 4

16. What did he do on Tuesday and Thursday nights from 7:00 p.m. through 12:00 p.m.?
(coordinated the patrols of the armed militia)
17. One day a week, Lao Zhang met with the cadre and discussed two (2) specific topics.
- When (day and time) was this type of meeting held?
(Friday; 6:30 [p.m. to 9:30 p.m.]
 - What were the two (2) specific topics of discussion?
(1. [how to pay attention to] the activities of the "bad elements,"
and 2. [how to] protect the interest of the masses)
18. What did Lao Zhang do on Sundays?
(supervised/led the labor [activities] of the militiamen [that he trained])
19. Why did he call quite a few new militiamen together one day and talk to them about doing manual labor?
([because] they didn't like manual labor OR they were not enthusiastic [about manual labor] OR they thought that undergoing training was enough OR they thought that they need not do manual labor)
20. In what two (2) specific types of production work did Lao Zhang say all militiamen should participate (in time of peace)?
(1. planting cabbage, and 2. raising pigs)
21. What did the "organization" expect to see within twenty years?
(a rise in [national/fatherland] construction)
22. What two (2) specific things did Lao Zhang tell the militiamen they should work for?
(1. [labor for the] national construction [effort], 2. [labor/work for the] interest of the masses)

MST, Unit 4

23. What two (2) specific things did the militiamen originally think that the "organization" wanted them to learn to do?

(1. plant cabbage, and 2. raise pigs)

24. Describe one (1) of the types of work for which the militiamen volunteered following Lao Zhang's talk (1 or 4 possible).

(repairing the houses [homes] of the masses)

(repairing the roads)

([going to Guangdong to] work with coastal defense [units])

([going to Dongbei to] work with border defense [units])

25. What assignment in Nanking is the "organization" going to give Lao Zhang?

(cadre[man] [at the Public Security Office/Organization])

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 请说一说为什么中国武装民兵的年纪都比普通民兵大？

Qǐng shuōyishuō wèishénme Zhōngguó wǔzhuāng mínbīng de niánji dōu bǐ pǔtōng mínbīng dà?

2. 如果喜欢参军的合格青年太多了，解放军在平时不需要那么多人，组织怎么安排他们？

Rúguǒ xǐhuan cānjūn de hégé qīngnián tàiduōle, jiěfàngjūn zài píngshí bùxūyào nàmeduō rén, zǔzhī zěnme ānpái tāmen?

3. 在中国，复员军人在退伍以前，组织会安排他们以后的工作吗？为什么？

Zài Zhōngguó, fùyuán jūnrén zài tuìwǔ yǐqián, zǔzhī huì ānpái tāmen yǐhòude gōngzuò ma? Wèishénme?

4. 民兵可以担任海防的工作吗？他的任务是什么？

Mínbīng kěyǐ dānrèn hǎifáng de gōngzuò ma? Tāde rènwù shì shénme?

5. 听说很多懂得气象跟医疗技术的士兵都被分派到海防部队服兵役去了，为什么？

Tīngshuō hěnduō dǒngdé qìxiàng gēn yīliáo jìshù de shìbīng dōu bèi fēnpài dào hǎifáng bùduì fú bīngyì qùle, wèishénme?

6. 基干民兵跟普通民兵平时对建设国家有什么帮助？

Jīgàn mínbīng gēn pǔtōng mínbīng píngshí duì jiànshè guójiā yǒu shénme bāngzhù?

7. 请说一说坏分子可以分成几类？坏分子没有改造好以前为什么不许当兵？

Qǐng shuōyishuō huàifēnzǐ kěyǐ fēnchéng jǐlèi? Huàifēnzǐ méiyǒu gǎizào hǎo yǐqián wèishénme bùxǔ dāngbīng?

8. 请讲一讲人民解放军一共分成几个军种？每一个军种服兵役的时期有什么不一样？

Qǐng jiǎngyìjiǎng rénmin jiěfàngjūn yìgòng fēnchéng jǐge jūnzhǒng?
Měiyíge jūnzhǒng fú bīngyì de shíqī yǒu shénme bù-yí-yàng?

9. 你可以不可以说一说想超期服现役的美国士兵得有什么条件？

Nǐ kěyǐ bùkěyǐ shuōyìshuō xiǎng chāoqī fú xiànyì de Měiguó shìbīng
děi yǒu shénme tiáojiàn?

10. 听说中国的普通民兵有好几千万人，比人民解放军还要多，为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguóde pǔtōng mínbīng yǒu hǎojǐqiānwàn rén, bǐ rénmin
jiěfàngjūn hái yào duō, wèishénme?

11. 请问中国武装民兵能有效地防御帝国主义侵略者吗？为什么？

Qǐng wèn Zhōngguó wǔzhuāng mínbīng néng yǒuxiàode fángyù dìguózhǔyì
qīnlüèzhě ma? Wèishénme?

12. 基干民兵跟普通民兵在平时对建设国家有什么帮助？

Jīgàn mínbīng gēn pǔtōng mínbīng zài píngshí duì jiànshè guójiā yǒu
shénme bāngzhù?

13. 听说那个青年报到入伍的时候，组织不让他去正规军服兵役，派他到普通民兵部队去了，为什么？

Tīngshuō nàge qīngnián bàodào rùwǔ de shíhou, zǔzhī búràng tā zài
zhèngguījūn fú bīngyì, pài tā dào pǔtōng mínbīng bùduì qùle,
wèishénme?

14. 要是有一个士兵服役期满以后，希望超期服现役，组织一定会让他留下来吗？为什么？

Yàoshi yíge shìbīng fúyì qīmǎn yǐhòu, xīwàng chāoqī fú xiànyì, zǔzhī yídìng huì ràng tā liúxiàlai ma? Wèishénme?

15. 对那些在部队里造谣的分子，组织知道以后，怎么安排他们？

Duì nàxiē zài bùduìlǐ zào yáo de fēnzǐ, zǔzhī zhīdao yǐhòu, zěnmē ānpái tāmen?

16. 要是士兵信了谣言，对干部的领导有误会，组织怎么办？

Yàoshi shìbīng xīnle yáoyán, duì gānbùde lǐngdǎo yǒu wùhuì, zǔzhī zěnmēbàn?

17. 为什么中国的武装民兵可以训练其他两类民兵？他们还可以协同公安机关担任什么工作？

Wèishénme Zhōngguóde wǔzhuāng mínbīng kěyǐ xùnliàn qítā liǎnglèi mínbīng? Tāmen hái kěyǐ xiétóng gōngān jīguān dānrèn shénme gōngzuò?

18. 一般地说，你得有什么特别的技能，组织才让你超期服现役？

Yìbānde shuō, nǐ děi yǒu shénme tèbiéde jìnéng, zǔzhī cái ràng nǐ chāoqī fú xiànyì?

19. 公安机关只负责消灭社会上的阶级敌人和坏分子吗？军队的呢？为什么？

Gōngān jīguān zhǐ fùzé xiāomiè shèhuìshàngde jiējí dírén hé huàifēnzǐ ma? Jūnduìde ne? Wèishénme?

20. 中国女人也有当兵的义务吗？组织会不会分派他们到正规军去服兵役？为什么？

Zhōngguó nǚrén yě yǒu dāngbīng de yìwù ma? Zǔzhī huì búhuì fēnpài tāmen dào zhèngguījūn qù fú bīngyì? Wèishénme?

21. 为什么中国分派很多武装民兵协同边防部队巡逻？

Wèishénme Zhōngguó fēnpài hěnduō wǔzhuāng mínbīng xiétóng biānfáng bùduì xúnluó?

22. 要是你在入伍训练的时期残废的，组织应该怎么安排你以后的工作？

Yàoshi nǐ zài rùwǔ xùnliàn de shíqī cánfèide, zǔzhī yīnggāi zěnme ānpái nǐ yǐhòude gōngzuò?

23. 请说一说民兵在平时参加什么工作？

Qǐng shuōyīshuō mínbīng zài píngshí cānjiā shénme gōngzuò?

24. 复员军人都可以当民兵吗？他们多半是当那一种民兵？为什么？

Fùyuán jūnrén dōu kěyǐ dāng mínbīng ma? Tāmen duōbànshi dāng nǎyìzhǒng mínbīng? Wèishénme?

25. 哪些人去当普通民兵？为什么一般地说普通民兵受的军事训练很少？

Nǎxiē rén qù dāng pǔtōng mínbīng? Wèishénme yìbānde shuō pǔtōng mínbīng shòude jūnshì xùnliàn hěn shǎo?

26. 在中国，“成分”好的意思是什么？请说说。

Zài Zhōngguó, "chéngfèn" hǎo de yìsi shì shénme? Qǐng shuōshuo.

27. 中国青年都愿意入伍服兵役，不太愿意到乡下去搞生产吗？为什么？

Zhōngguó qīngnián dōu yuànyì rùwǔ fú bīngyì, bú tài yuànyì dào xiāngxià qù gǎo shēngchǎn ma? Wèishénme?

28. 请说一说在中国，一个想到解放军服兵役的青年得有些什么条件才合格？

Qǐng shuōyishuō zài Zhōngguó, yíge xiǎng dào jiěfàngjūn fú bīngyì de qīngnián dēi yǒuxiē shénme tiáojiàn cái hégé?

29. 一个士兵在超期服现役的时候想结婚，组织许他早一点退役吗？为什么？

Yíge shìbīng zài chāoqī fú xiànyì de shíhou xiǎng jiéhūn, zǔzhī xǔ tā zǎoyìdiǎn tuìyì ma? Wèishénme?

30. 中国的正规军需要武装民兵配合，来打击侵略者吗？为什么？

Zhōngguóde zhèngguījūn xūyào wǔzhuāng mínbīng pèihé, lái dǎjī qīnlüèzhě ma? Wèishénme?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. Coastal defense is a large part of protecting the fatherland. The military people responsible for coastal defense must undergo special basic training.
2. Military affairs are sometimes very simple. They are divided into various types of basic organizations, for example, the organization that handles border defense and the organization that is in charge of coastal defense.
3. Even in time of peace, the military people responsible for coastal defense must pay attention to coordinate with Regular Army and Navy patrols.
4. The Regular Army is responsible for arming and training the people's militia. After the militia has completed the training, there is no great difference between them and the Regular Army.
5. I want to go to Hong Kong next week to participate in the production exposition there. But now I don't have the free time to reserve a plane ticket. Could you arrange it for me?

6. The workers often do not understand military affairs, but they are very important with regard to national defense. They are often responsible for the work of construction, production, etc.

7. Before leaving for the exposition, we must select a delegation leader. The one we select should be the one whose understanding of production techniques is best.

8. The military personnel here are divided into quite a few categories. Generally speaking, only the Regular Army participates in border defense and armed patrolling.

9. The Regular Army yearly selects military personnel to act as common militia and armed militia. The common militia may only participate in construction or production, while the armed militia may participate in border defense, coastal defense, etc.

10. Of the militiamen who live in this farming village, only a few participate in agricultural production. The rest don't participate in anything; their only duty is to collect intelligence information.

11. At this factory of ours, production has expanded very quickly, especially in the manufacture of airplane engines. This is because the responsibility for production was assumed by the Regular Army last year.

12. Common American food doesn't taste as good as regular Chinese food. For example, I can only eat one bowl of American soup, but I can eat quite a few bowls of Chinese soup. Furthermore, Chinese food is more beneficial for your body (health).

13. In regard to military affairs, the most important thing is to coordinate the national defense. The Army, Navy, and Air Force must all coordinate the affairs for which they are mutually responsible.

14. The "committee" must select those military persons who are to participate in the Land Reform Movement. You cannot casually participate, you must have a good understanding of the benefits of agriculture.

15. When your term of service expires, do you want to serve as a basic militiaman or as an armed militiaman? Of course you know that our nation has these two categories of militia (I presume).

16. I think that serving as a basic militiaman would be best. In that case, I would not have to participate in border defense or coastal defense. The duties of the basic militia are all very simple.

17. I suppose that serving in the armed militia would be really glorious. Not only is it interesting, but their standard of living is also relatively high.

18. At this university, the things that we study have been divided into several categories. Literature and history are one category. Political science and economics is another, and there is also mathematics.

19. The persons at the American Embassy who are responsible for military matters all work in the Military Attaché's Office. There are quite a few military officers who work there, and more than 15 sergeants.

20. If you are not willing to coordinate with me, then there is no way that I can help you. Today I want to take part in a picnic and I cannot wait for you to give me a (phone) call.

21. The construction of a new house is a lot of trouble. Not only must you coordinate closely with the construction personnel, moreover they must cooperate with your family members.

22. What are the requirements for selecting a new department chief? He must be over 25 years old and have a good "social origin." He should also be rich and believe everything that the Communist Party says.

23. People with ordinary skills should handle ordinary jobs. People with special skills should handle special jobs. For example, those doing agricultural work should have agricultural skills, and those doing production work should have skills that are related to production.

24. What is the difference between the obligations of the common militia and the armed militia? There is no difference in their obligations, only in their skills.

25. Using common militia to handle matters for which the Regular Army is responsible is very dangerous. The great majority of the common militiamen still have not undergone basic training. How can they manage?

26. Your own nation is never considered to be the aggressor, it is always the other country that is called "aggressor." This is because the word not only sounds bad, but the leaders of the "aggressors" are always considered to be bad elements.

27. Misunderstandings have no benefit for anyone. The misunderstandings between people are very bad, but worst of all is if the government of one nation misunderstands the policies of the government of another.

28. You misunderstand the policy of our government! We are not the aggressors, nor do we believe in imperialism. Our government's policy is only to defend ourselves against other aggressors.

29. In order to defend our country, we must voluntarily work in coordination with the border and coastal defense units. Under these conditions, it will have great benefits for all.

30. Public safety is the responsibility of the government; therefore, each city has its own police station, ambulance, hospital, etc. The government has also set up a meteorology organization to tell the masses when the weather will be bad.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Zhōngguó cóng Yíjǐliùlíngnián yǐhòu, hěn zhùyì biānfáng jiànshè, bìngqiě chángcháng pài zhèngguǐjūn xiétóng wǔzhuāng mínbǐng xúnluó.
2. Tīngshuō Zhōngguóde pǔtōng mínbǐng shǐyòngde wǔqì hěn jiùle, wèile fāngyù běifāng dìguózhǔyì qīnlüèzhě, dǎng zhōngyāng yǐjīng juédìng gěi tāmen xīn wǔqì.
3. Zuótiān yǒu yíge fǎndòngfènzǐ zài jiēshàng zào yáoyán, hòulái bèi gōngān jǐguān pàiláide rén zhuāzǒule.
4. Yǒurénshuō, tǐgé jiǎnchá bùhége de qīngnián bùnéng dào Zhōngguó Jiěfàngjūn qù fú bìngyì.
5. Zài Zhōngguó, nǚrén gēn nánrén yíyàng, dào le shíbasuì yě děi dāngbǐng. Búguò tāmen duōbàn dānrèn mínbǐng de gōngzuò.
6. Yíbānde shuō, pǔtōng mínbǐng píngshí dōushi cānjiā guójiā shēngchǎn jiànshè, xiàng zhōng báicài, yǎng zhū shénmede gōngzuò.
7. Pǔtōng mínbǐng suǐrán búsuàn shì zhèngguǐjūn, shòude jūnshì xùnliàn yě méiyǒu zhèngguǐjūn duō, kěshì tāmen dōu zhīdao dǎzhàng de jībēn jìshù.

8. Yībānde shuō, Zhōngguó rén wúlùn shì nóng rén, jūn rén huò shì gōng rén, dōu zhīdao yīng gāi bǎ wújiāde lìyì fàngzài zìjīde lìyì qiánbian.
9. Měi yíge bùduì de dānwèi dōu yǒu zhòngwǔqì, fùzérén zǒngshì tiāoxuǎn shēntǐ gāodà de zhànshì lái bǎoguǎn.
10. Zài Zhōngguó, yībānde shuō, huàifènzǐ kēyì fēnchéng liǎnglèi: Dìyīlèi shì hái méiyǒu gǎizàohǎo de dīzhǔ; dìèrlèi shì gěi fǎndòngpài zuòguo shì de rén.
11. Jìgàn mínbīng zài píngshí chūle xiétóng rénmín gōngshè de shèyuán shēngchǎn jiànshè yǐwài, yě xùnlìan tāmen shǐyòng bùqiāng dēngdēng de jīběn wǔqì.
12. Tīngshuō Zhōngguó gèlèi mínbīng jiāqǐlai yǒu liù, qīqiānwàn rén. Zhǐyào tāmen yǒu xiàndàihuà de wǔqì, yíding kēyì fāngyù dīguózhǔyì qīnlüèzhě.
13. Yībānláishuō, biānfáng bùduì xúnluó de shíhou zhǐ dài qīngwǔqì. Zhǐyǒu dǎzhàng de shíhou cái shǐyòng zhòngwǔqì.
14. Rúguǒ guójiā gēn guójiā zhōngjiān yǒule wùhuì jiù dǎzhàng, zhège shìjiè jiù hěn bùānquán le.
15. Dàbùfen de jūnshì xíngdòng gēn tiānqì hěn yǒuguānxi, suǒyì zǔzhǐ hěn xīwang dǒng qìxiàng de rén chāoqǐ fú xiànyì.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate" because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 4

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Zhao Zhiyun, a cadre in the Chinese militia, is discussing the Chinese militia with David Williams, an American visitor to Suzhou.

1. D: How many people are there in the Chinese militia?

Z: 一共有八千万左右。

Yígòng yǒu bāqiānwàn zuǒyòu.

2. D: What is the militia training like?

Z: 民兵分成三类。基干民兵跟武装民兵都是受过陆军基本训练的复员军人。第三类是普通民兵；这些人可以说是没受过训练的。

Mínbīng fēnchéng sānlèi. Jīgàn mínbīng gēn wǔzhuāng mínbīng dōushi shòuguo lùjūn jīběn xùnlìan de fùyuán jūnrén. Dìsānlèi shì pǔtōng mínbīng; zhèxiē rén kéyǐ shuō shì méi shòuguo xùnlìande.

3. D: What is the difference between the basic militia and the armed militia?

Z: 武装民兵都是从基干民兵里边挑选出来的。只有基干民兵的百分之二十五。

Wǔzhuāng mínbīng dōushi cóng jīgàn mínbīng lǐbian tiāoxuǎn chūlaide. zhǐyǒu jīgàn mínbīng de bǎifēnzhīèrshiwǔ.

4. D: Is there a difference in their work?

Z: 有分别。武装民兵负责边防、海防，并且还训练其他两类民兵。平时，所有的民兵都要参加生产建设。

Yǒu fēnbié. Wǔzhuāng mínbīng fùzé biānfáng, hǎifáng, bìngqiě hái xùnlìan qítāde liǎnglèi mínbīng. Píngshí, suǒyǒude mínbīng dōu yào cānjiā shēngchǎn jiànshè.

5. D: Please tell me, how many people are there in the armed militia and how many people are there in the basic militia?

Z: 目前基干民兵有一千五百万人，武装民兵有五百万人。剩下的六千万是普通民兵。

Mùqián jìgàn mínbīng yǒu yìqiānwǔbǎiwàn rén, wǔzhuāng mínbīng yǒu wǔbǎiwàn rén. Shèngxiāde liùqiānwàn shì pǔtōng mínbīng.

6. D: Why is there an ordinary militia? You've already said that they receive very little training.

Z: 中国有敌人所以我们都得准备好了才能保卫祖国。没受过训练的人受了训练以后也就可以参加保卫祖国的工作了。

Zhōngguó yǒu dírén suǒyì wǒmen dōu děi zhǔnbèi hǎole cái néng bǎowèi zǔguó. Méi shòuguó xùnliàn de rén shòule xùnliàn yǐhòu yějiù kěyǐ cānjiā bǎowèi zǔguó de gōngzuò le.

7. D: What relationship does the militia have to the Regular Army?

Z: 民兵协同正规军负责边防、海防，等等。有时候，正规也负责训练民兵。

Mínbīng xiétóng zhèngguījūn fùzé biānfáng, hǎifáng, děngděng. Yǒushíhòu, zhèngguījūn yě fùzé xùnliàn mínbīng.

8. D: Isn't the Regular Army also responsible for coastal and border defense?

Z: 是的，他们有民兵帮忙。除了海防、边防以外，正规军也参加生产建设。在这方面，也有民兵协同工作。

Shìde, tāmen yǒu mínbīng bāngmáng. Chúle hǎifáng, biānfáng yǐwài, zhèngguījūn yě cānjiā shēngchǎn jiànshè. Zài zhè fāngmian, yěyǒu mínbīng xiétóng gōngzuò.

9. D: Do women also serve in the militia?

Z: 当然！所有的中国人都愿意为祖国服务。女人也愿意服兵役。

Dāngrán! Suǒyǒude Zhōngguó rén dōu yuànyì wèi zǔguó fúwù. Nǚrén yě yuànyì fú bīngyì.

10. D: Are older people required to serve in the militia?

Z: 不用。过了五十岁的人就不必当民兵了。平常，当民兵的都是十六岁到三十岁之间的人。

Búyòng. Guòle wǔshísuì de rén jiù búbì dāng mínbīng le. Píngcháng, dāng mínbīngde dōushi shíliùsuì dào sānshísuì zhījiānde rén.

11. D: Do you have militia units all over the country?

Z: 哪里都有，在乡下每一个公社都有一个民兵部队；
在城市里，每一个工厂都有一个民兵部队。

Náli dōu yǒu, zài xiāngxià měi yíge gōngshè dōu yǒu yíge mínbīng
bùduì; zài chéngshìlǐ, měi yíge gōngchǎng dōu yǒu yíge mínbīng
bùduì.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: The representative of a large American department store has contacted the American Embassy in Beijing to discuss the problem of security for his company's department store in view of the increasingly violent "Second Cultural Revolution." The American ambassador has arranged a meeting between the representative and the representative of the American company and a representative of the Beijing Bureau of Public Safety to discuss the matter.

Role 1: Mr. Smith is the American ambassador to Beijing. Being responsible for the protection of American personnel and interests in Beijing, so he has arranged the meeting, and acts as the mediator. There are twenty (20) American soldiers assigned to the American Embassy, however they cannot be assigned outside the embassy, as they are responsible for the protection of embassy personnel. He feels that the actual protection of American property rests with the government of the PRC.

Role 2: Comrade Fang is the division chief of the local Bureau of Public Safety. The official situation from the viewpoint of the Bureau is that the government is indeed responsible, however the police normally assigned to this type of affair are currently working 18 hours per day already. One possibility is assigning PRC Army troops to protect the American department store, but the majority of troops in the Beijing area have already been sent to other provinces to maintain the situations there. A second option is to have the store close, and use militia to protect the outside of the building. However, Comrade Fang feels that it is not satisfactory to allow the militia to patrol at random through the building, as the Bureau has no way to tell which militiamen are of the "bad elements." There are also 10 cadre available (five for day, and five for night) for assignment by the Bureau.

Role 3: Mr. Johnson is the representative of a large American department store in Beijing. The Beijing store has been very profitable, so his first priority is to keep the store open during business hours. However, he is very concerned about the security of the store, especially during business hours. He wants at least 50 armed men to patrol through the store during business hours, and insists that all of the armed men be totally dependable. He also wants 20 armed men to patrol at night around the building. He would prefer American soldiers, but will accept Chinese Bureau of Security personnel, and wants to establish day and night patrols for the building.

Scenario 2

Situation: Representatives of the Chinese Army, militia, and Bureau of Public Safety have met in a small village in Heilongjiang Province about 10 kilometers from the Russian border to discuss certain security matters. The division chief from the Bureau of Public Safety has called the meeting because the Chinese border defense activities to date have been comparatively ineffective, and Russian patrols have been entering China at will. In the past, the local militia was used for all border defense patrol activities, and more effective patrolling methods must be found.

Role 1: Comrade Zhang is the local division chief who is responsible for border patrols in the vicinity of the village. He feels that the patrols have been ineffective because there are only 25 militiamen in the village, and more cannot be assigned this year in order to make the patrol activities more effective. He feels that using Regular Army troops for patrol activities would be best, and that a minimum of 65 people must take part in the border defense activities for them to be effective.

Role 2: Comrade Zhōu is the local militia representative. His feeling is that the division chief completely misunderstands the situation in the village. He knows that the patrols by his militia have been relatively ineffective, but feels that this is because the militia is not armed and the Regular Army does not want to coordinate with his troops. He wishes to insure that the militia continues to play a part in patrolling for both political and training purposes. At present, his militia is not allowed to patrol more than five kilometers from the village, as only armed militia should be responsible for total patrol activities.

Role 3: Major Hu is the representative of the Regular Army units assigned in the province. He feels that during peacetime, his troops have more important matters than border defense, as his major concern is the training of new troops. However, he knows that the division chief has quite a few good friends in Beijing, and realizes that he may have to make some concessions. However, he is determined not to give up more than 20 Regular Army troops for border defense matters, or possibly 40 trainees.

Scenario 3

Situation: A representative of the French Armed Forces is visiting Beijing, and he has arranged a meeting with two representatives of the PRC government in order to discuss national defense subjects of the two allied nations. As the Chinese have shown their border and coastal defense organs to be excellent both in respect to Russia and Vietnam, they have been accepted as the "authority" on active national defense.

Role 1: M. Chevalier (Xièfóliài) is a representative of the Military Attache's Office in Beijing, and has acted in coordination with the Chinese Armed Forces for the past five years in matters of military training and organization. Up to the present, he has dealt with these matters of mutual interest to both nations only in general terms, and has been instructed by the French government to find out as much as possible about the actual workings of the Chinese national defense organization, to include the numbers of militia/cadre and Regular Army involved in both border and coastal defense.

Role 2: Comrade Fang is the representative for the Chinese militia. He is tired of everyone thinking that only the Regular Army participates in patrol activities, and wants to emphasize the importance of the militia/cadre in national defense. He also wants to stress the fact that the militia takes part in over 40% of all patrol activities, and conducts approximately 20% of the PRC's coastal defense with militia and cadre alone. Further, he wants to let the Frenchman know that the cadre is the backbone of all PRC military and militia organizations, and that they all voluntarily become cadre only after being individually selected by the "organization."

Role 3: Comrade Qián is the representative of the Chinese Regular Army. He wishes to emphasize that every Chinese soldier receives at least two months of patrol training each year to defend the nation against all aggressors, and one month of political training each year to enable each soldier to defend himself against the ideas/goals of imperialism. He wants to explain that working in coordination with the militia has great benefits for the entire nation, but the Army does not really need the help of the militia in conducting border and coastal defense activities. He fears that the Frenchman misunderstands the importance of the militia in national defense.

UNIT 5

DIALOGUE



1. A: 民兵战时的任务一定也很重要吧?
B: 可不是吗! 他们得进行游击战、扰乱敌人, 并且还得秘密搜集情报, 不让间谍有活动的机会。

2. A: 什么人可以当民兵干部?
B: 不是人人都可以当干部的。只有党员、可靠的工人、贫下中农跟积极分子才可以当干部。

3. A: 现在我想起来了。我认识一个民兵干部。他说从前他父亲是下中农, 他自己是贫农, 在共产党有廿多年了, 组织认为他很可靠, 所以派他当干部。
B: 我刚才说的话没错吧! 象他那种的干部最可靠了。

4. A: 一点也不错。你们民兵的武器怎么样?
B: 差不多都是手枪、步枪、机枪, 等等的轻武器。

5. A: 什么重武器都没有吗?
B: 有的民兵部队有反坦克炮跟高射炮, 可是不多。

6. A: 听说你们的武器够, 弹药不够。
B: 那是谣言, 我们的弹药平时和战时都够用。

1. A: Mínbīng zhànshíde rènwù yídìng yě hěn zhòngyào ba?
The militia's wartime missions must also be very important, I suppose?
- B: Kě búshì ma! Tāmen děi jīnxíng yóujīzhàn, rǎoluàn dírén, bìngqiě hái děi mìmì sōují qíngbào, búràng jiàn-dié yǒu huódòng de jīhuì.
They certainly are! They must carry out guerrilla warfare to harass the enemy and also secretly collect intelligence information so as not to give the spies a chance to engage in (espionage) activities.
2. A: Shénme rén kěyǐ dāng mínbīng gānbù?
Who can serve as a militia cadre?
- B: Búshì rénrén dōu kěyǐ dāng gānbù de. Zhǐyǒu dǎngyuán, kèkào de gōngrén, pínxià-zhōngnóng gēn jījífènzǐ cái kěyǐ dāng gānbù.
Not everybody can serve as a cadre. Only Party members, trustworthy workers, poor and lower-middle class peasants and activists can serve as cadres.
3. A: Xiànzài wǒ xiǎngqǐlai le. Wǒ rènshi yíge mínbīng gānbù. Tā shuō cóngqián tā fùqīn shì xiàzhōngnóng, tā zìjǐ shì pínóng, zài Gōngchǎndǎng yǒu èrshíduō-nián le, zǔzhǐ rènwéi tā hěn kèkào, suǒyǐ pài tā dāng gānbù.
Now I recall. I knew a militia cadre. He said that formerly his father was a lower-middle class peasant; he himself was a poor peasant and had been in the Communist Party for more than twenty years. The "organization" considered him very trustworthy and (therefore) appointed him a cadre.
- B: Wǒ gāngcái shuōde huà méicuò ba! Xiǎng tā nàzhǒng de gānbù zuì kèkào le.
Now you see what I just said was correct. Cadres like his kind are most trustworthy.
4. A: Yìdiǎnr yě búcuò. Nǐmen mínbīng de wǔqì zěnmeyàng?
Absolutely. (By the way), how are your militia's weapons?
- B: Chābùduō dōushì shǒuqiāng, bùqiāng, jīqiāng, dēngdēng de qīng wǔqì.
Almost all of them are light weapons such as pistols, rifles, machine guns, etc.

5. A: Shénme zhòng wǔqì dōu méiyǒu ma?
B: Yǒude mínbīng bùduì yǒu fǎn-tǎnkèpào gēn gāoshèpào, kěshì bùduō.
6. A: Tīngshuō nǐmende wǔqì gòu, dàn yào búgòu.
B: Nà shì yáoyán. Wǒmende dàn yào píngshí hé zhànshí dōu gòu yòng.
- Don't they have any heavy weapons at all?
Some militia units have antitank guns and antiaircraft guns, but there aren't many.
I've heard that you have enough weapons but not enough ammunition.
That's rumor. We have enough ammunition for both peacetime and wartime.

VOCABULARY

步 枪	bùqiāng	rifle (C: zhǐ)
党 员	dǎngyuán	(party) member
弹 药	dànyào	ammunition
敌 人	dírén	enemy
反 坦 克 炮	fǎntǎnkèpào	antitank gun (C: mén)
高 射 炮	gāoshèpào	antiaircraft gun (C: mén)
够 用	gòu yòng	enough (for use)
间 谍	jiàndié	spy
积 极 分 子	jījífènzǐ	activist, enthusiast
机 枪	jīqiāng	machine gun (C: tǐng)
可 不 是 吗 !	kě búshi ma!	It certainly is!
可 靠	kěkào	to be reliable, to be trustworthy
秘 密	mìmi	secret, to be secret, secretly
贫 农	pínnóng	poor peasant
贫 下 中 农	pínxiàzhōngnóng	poor & lower-middle class peasant
情 报	qíngbào	intelligence information
扰 乱	rǎoluàn	to harass (mil), to disturb
任 务	rènwù	mission, duty
手 枪	shǒuqiāng	pistol (C: zhǐ)
搜 集	sōují	to collect
武 器	wǔqì	weapon
下 中 农	xiàzhōngnóng	lower-middle class peasant
游 击 战	yóujīzhàn	guerrilla warfare
战 时	zhànshí	time of war, in time of war, wartime
只 有	zhǐyǒu	only

STORY COMPREHENSION

老赵在我们这个公社的民兵部队当了好几年的干部了。办事很有积极性。白天领导武装民兵训练新兵学习游击战，晚上协同公安部队在公社附近巡逻。星期日早上参加生产工作，下午参加劳动工作帮助公社的社员修房子、修路。大家都觉得老赵是公社的基干，并且岁数也大了，不必劳动了；他说，“要建设一个新中国，不让帝国主义侵略我们，大家都得参加生产劳动。我怎么能不做呢？”他说了以后，大家更觉得他是一个好干部了。

老赵是一个复员军人，在正规军服过三十多年的兵役。复员以后，组织派他到沈阳来，在我们这个公社的一个纺织厂工作，

Lǎo Zhào zài wǒmen zhège gōngshè de mínbīng bùduì dāngle hǎojǐnián de gānbù le. Bànshì hěn yǒu jījíxìng. Báitiān lǐngdǎo wǔzhuāng mínbīng xùnliàn xīn mínbīng xuéxí yóujīzhàn, wǎnshàng xiétóng gōngān bùduì zài gōngshè fùjìn xúnluó. Xīngqīrì zǎoshàng cānjiā shēngchǎn gōngzuò, xiàwǔ cānjiā láodòng gōngzuò bāngzhù gōngshè de shèyuán xiū fángzi, xiū lù. Dàjiā dōu juéde Lǎo Zhào shì gōngshè de jīgàn, bìngqiě suìshu yě dàle, búbì láodòng le; tā shuō, "Yào jiànshè yíge xīn Zhōngguó, búràng dìguó-zhǔyì qīnlüè wǒmen, dàjiā dōu dēi cānjiā shēngchǎn láodòng. Wǒ zěnme kěyǐ búzuò ne?" Tā shuōle yǐhòu, dàjiā gèng juéde tā shì yíge hǎo gānbù le.

Lǎo Zhào shì yíge fùyuán jūnrén, zài zhèngguījūn fúguo sānshíduōnián de bīngyì. Fùyuán yǐhòu, zǔzhī pài tā dào Shěnyáng lái, zài wǒmen zhège gōngshè de yíge fǎngzhīchǎng gōngzuò,

并且当基干民兵。那个时候，沈阳正在进行建设，反革命分子和坏分子当然不愿意看见我们把这个工作搞好，所以用了各种办法来扰乱我们，并且造了很多谣言。比方说，第一个谣言说，共产党组织民兵的目的不是保护群众的利益，是要保护共产党自己的利益。第二个谣言说，只有反革命分子才会搞生产、搞建设；第三个谣言说，民兵的武器跟弹药都不够用，怎么能防御侵略者？组织听到了这些谣言以后，知道阶级敌人跟帝国主义侵略者又在一起扰乱我们了，我们应当马上搜集情报把造谣言的间谍找出来。可是谁能担任这个工作呢？组织的领导干部讨论了很久，最后，决定从基干民兵里头挑出来二十个人，叫他们秘密地到北京去受训三个月，学习怎么搜集情报，受完

bìngqiě dāng jīgàn mínbīng. Nàge shíhou, Shěnyáng zhèngzài jìnxíng jiànshè, fǎngémìng fènzǐ hé huàifènzǐ dāngrán búyuànyì kànjian wǒmen bǎ zhège gōngzuò gǎo hǎo, suǒyǐ yòngle gèzhǒng bànfǎ lái rǎoluàn wǒmen, bìngqiě zàole hěnduō yáoyán. Bǐfāng shuō, dìyíge yáoyán shuō, Gòngchǎndǎng zǔzhǐ mínbīng de mùdì búshì bǎohù qúnzhòng de lìyì, shì yào bǎohù Gòngchǎndǎng zìjǐ de lìyì. Dìèrge yáoyán shuō, zhǐyǒu fǎngémìng fènzǐ cái huì gǎo shēngchǎn, gǎo jiànshè; dìsānge yáoyán shuō, mínbīng de wǔqì gēn dànnyào dōu búgòu yòng, zěnmé néng fángyù qīnlüèzhě? Zǔzhǐ tīngdàole zhèxiē yáoyán yǐhòu, zhīdào jiējí díren gēn Dìguózhǔyì qīnlüèzhě yòu zài yìqǐ rǎoluàn wǒmen le, wǒmen yīngdāng mǎshàng sōují qíngbào bǎ zào yáoyán de jiàndiē zhǎozhūlai. Kěshì shéi néng dānrèn zhège gōngzuò ne? Zǔzhǐ de lǐngdǎo gānbù tāolùnle hěn jiǔ, zuìhòu, juéding cóng jīgàn mínbīng lǐtou tiāochūlai èrshíge rén, jiào tāmen mìmìde dào Běijīng qù shòuxùn sānge yuè, xuéxí zěnmé sōují

了训练以后再回到沈阳来进行工作。组织挑选二十个人的时候，老赵也在里头。他办事很积极搜集情报的工作办得很好，很快地就把间谍找出来了。

十年以前，我们这个公社的民兵部队需要几个干部，组织叫我挑五个人，我挑的第一个人就是老赵。组织说，老赵有问题，因为他的成分不太好，他的祖父是地主，虽然改造过，可是没改造好。我跟组织说，虽然老赵的祖父是地主，可是他父亲是贫农，老赵自己也是贫农，并且组织从前还认为老赵是积极分子。我又说，如果我们说老赵不可靠，那么世界上就没有可靠的人了。组织觉得我说的话不错，就决定派他当干部。不过，有一个条件，就是他得进共产党当

qíngbào, shòuwánle xùnliàn yǐhòu zài huídào Shěnyáng lái jìnxíng gōngzuò. Zǔzhī tiāoxuǎn èrshíge rén de shíhou, Lǎo Zhào yě zài lǐtou. Tā bànshì hěn jījí, sōují qíngbào de gōngzuò bànde hěn hǎo, hěnkuaide jiù bǎ jiàndié zhǎochūlai le.

Shínián yǐqián, wǒmen zhège gōngshè de mínbīng bùduì xūyào jǐge gānbù, zǔzhī jiào wǒ tiāo wǔge rén, wǒ tiāode dìyíge rén jiùshì Lǎo Zhào. Zǔzhī shuō, Lǎo Zhào yǒu wèntí, yīnwei tāde chéngfèn bú tài hǎo, tāde zǔfù shì dìzhǔ, suīrán gǎizàoguò, kěshì méi gǎizào hǎo. Wǒ gēn zǔzhī shuō, suīrán Lǎo Zhào de zǔfù shì dìzhǔ, kěshì tā fùqīn shì pínóng, Lǎo Zhào zìjǐ yě shì pínóng, bìngqiě zǔzhī cóngqián hái rènwéi Lǎo Zhào shì jījífēnzǐ. Wǒ yòu shuō, rúguǒ wǒmen shuō Lǎo Zhào bùkěkào, nàme shìjièshang jiù méiyǒu kěkào de rén le. Zǔzhī juéde wǒ shuōde huà búcuò, jiù juéding pài tā dāng gānbù. Búguò, yǒu yíge tiáojiàn, jiùshì tā děi jìn Gòngchǎndǎng dāng dǎngyuán. Wǒ shuō, nà búshì tiáojiàn, Lǎo Zhào zìjǐ jiù

党员。我说，那不是条件，老赵自己就很希望当党员呢。后来，老赵当了共产党党员，三个月以后，组织就派他当干部了。

老赵非常注意帝国主义间谍的活动。有一天，有一个外国人到我们公社来参观，我叫老赵陪他去看看民兵部队。他问老赵，民兵部队一共有多少步枪、多少手枪、战时负责什么任务。老赵说，那是秘密，不能告诉别人。那个外国人马上就不再继续问了。可是过了一会儿，他说，“赵同志，你们当干部的没有很多钱吧？”老赵马上说，“可不是吗，我一个月才有二十多块钱，买什么都不够。”那个外国人就说，“我想送给你五百块钱，不过有一个条件。”老赵说，“那太好了，是什么条件呢？”那个外国人说，“我想知道你们在沈阳的民兵部队有多少枝步枪、多少枝手枪、

hěn xīwàng dāng dǎngyuán ne. Hòulái, Lǎo Zhào dāngle Gòngchǎndǎng dǎngyuán, sānge yuè yǐhòu, zǔzhī jiù pài tā dāng gānbù le.

Lǎo Zhào fēicháng zhùyì dìguó-zhǔyì jiàndié de huódòng. Yǒu yìtiān, yǒu yíge wàiguórén dào wǒmen gōngshè lái cānguān, wǒ jiào Lǎo Zhào péi tā qù kànkān mínbīng bùduì. Tā wèn Lǎo Zhào, mínbīng bùduì yíòng yǒu duōshǎo bùqiāng, duōshǎo shǒuqiāng, zhànshí fùzé shénme rènwù. Lǎo Zhào shuō, nà shì mìmì, bùnéng gàosu biérén. Nàge wàiguórén mǎshàng jiù búzài jìxù wèn le. Kěshi guòle yìhuǐr, tā shuō, "Zhào Tóngzhì, nǐmen dāng gānbù de méiyǒu hěnduō qián ba?" Lǎo Zhào mǎshàng shuō, "Kěbúshì ma, wǒ yíge yuè cái yǒu èrshíduōkuài qián, mǎi shénme dōu búgòu." Nàge wàiguórén jiù shuō, "Wǒ xiǎng sòng gěi nǐ wǔbǎikuài qián, búguò yǒu yíge tiáojiàn." Lǎo Zhào shuō, "Nà tài hǎole, shì shénme tiáojiàn ne?" Nàge wàiguórén shuō, "Wǒ xiǎng zhīdao nǐmen zài Shěnyáng de mínbīng bùduì yǒu duōshǎozhī bùqiāng, duōshǎozhī

多少挺机枪、弹药都放在哪儿？民兵战时有什么秘密的任务。要是你把这些事情告诉我，我马上就给你五百块。”老赵说，“好啊。你要不要知道我们有多少门高射炮跟反坦克炮呢？”那个外国人说，“那更好了。跟民兵有关系的情报你都写下来给我吧。”老赵说，“这件事不难办。不过我会写的字不太多，最好你把你想知道的事情写在纸上，那么对我就比较容易。明天晚上八点半，你把钱跟你写下来的问题带到我的办公室来，你得秘密地来，不要让别人看见。”那个外国人听了以后很高兴地走了。第二天晚上他到了老赵的办公室，把东西给老赵的时候，马上有一个人从里头的小房间走出来给他们照相。那个外国人害怕得

shǒuqiāng, duōshāotǐng jīqiāng,
dànyào dōu fāngzai nǎr? Mínbīng
zhànshí yǒu shénme mìmìde rènwù.
Yǎoshi nǐ bǎ zhèxiē shìqing gāosu wǒ,
wǒ mǎshang jiù gěi nǐ wǔbǎikuài."
Lǎo Zhào shuō, "Hǎo a. Nǐ yào buyào
zhīdao wǒmen yǒu duōshāomén gāoshèpào
gēn fǎntǎnkèpào ne?" Nàge wàiguorén
shuō, "Nà gèng hǎole. Gēn mínbīng
yǒu guānxi de qíngbào nǐ dōu xiěxiàlai
gěi wǒ ba." Lǎo Zhào shuō: "Zhèjiàn
shì bù nán bàn. Búguò, wǒ huì xiěde
zì bú tài duō, zuìhǎo nǐ bǎ nǐ xiǎng
zhīdao de shìqing xiězai zhǐshàng,
nàme duì wǒ jiù bǐjiào róngyì. Míng-
tiān wǎnshàng bādiǎnbàn, nǐ bǎ qián
gēn nǐ xiěxiàlai de wèntí dàidào
wǒde bàngōngshì lái, nǐ děi mìmìde
lái, búyào ràng biérén kànjian."
Nàge wàiguorén tīngle yǐhòu, hěn
gāoxìngde zǒule. Dìèrtiān wǎnshàng,
tā dào le Lǎo Zhào de bàngōngshì,
bǎ dōngxi gěi Lǎo Zhào de shíhou,
mǎshang yǒu yíge rén cóng lǐtòude
xiǎo fángjiān zǒuzhūlai gěi tāmen
zhàoxiàng. Nàge wàiguorén hàipàde
lián huà yě shuōbùchūlai le. Zhège

话也说不出来了。这个时候，又有几个干部从小房间里头走出来把那个外国间谍带到公安机关去了。

shíhou, yòu yǒu jǐge gānbù cóng xiǎo
fángjiān lǐtòu zǒuchūlai bǎ nàge
wàiguó jiàndié dàidào gōngān jīguān
qùle.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS
for
STORY COMPREHENSION

1. What does Lao Zhao do in the daytime?
2. What does Lao Zhao do in the evenings?
3. For what two (2) reasons does everyone feel that Lao Zhao need not do manual labor?
4. After Lao Zhao's discharge from the Armed Forces, what two (2) things did the "organization" assign him to do?
5. When Lao Zhao was assigned to Shenyang/Mukden, construction was in progress. What two (2) elements did not want to see us succeed?
6. The aforementioned elements started several rumors. What was the first rumor?
7. What was the second rumor?

8. What was the third rumor?
9. In the opinion of the "organization," what two (2) groups are ganging up to harass us?
10. Who were we supposed to ferret out?
11. Twenty people were selected to go to Beijing for training. What were they supposed to learn to do?
12. When does the story say that our militia units needed a few cadre?
13. Why did the "organization" say that Lao Zhao had a problem?
14. What was the status of Lao Zhao's father?
15. What had the "organization" already considered Lao Zhao to be?
16. What condition did the "organization" impose on Lao Zhao as a requisite for becoming a cadre?
17. When the foreigner first asked Lao Zhao about the weapons used by the militia, what was his answer?

18. How much money did Lao Zhao make a month?
19. How much money did the foreigner offer Lao Zhao?
20. In exchange for the money, the foreigner wanted to know three things.
List two (2) of the things that he wanted to know.
21. What information did Lao Zhao volunteer in addition to what the foreigner wanted to know (be specific)?
22. What did Lao Zhao, in order to make the task easier for himself, ask the foreigner to do first before they would meet again?
23. (1) When (day and time) and (2) where was the rendezvous supposed to take place?
24. When the foreigner was handing the things to Lao Zhao, what happened?
25. Where did the cadres take the foreigner?

STORY COMPREHENSION
Answers to Questions

1. What does Lao Zhao do in the daytime?
(leads [the armed militia] in training the new militia for guerrilla warfare)
2. What does Lao Zhao do in the evenings?
(works in coordination with [the public security] units patrolling [near the commune])
3. For what two (2) reasons does everyone feel that Lao Zhao need not do manual labor?
(1. he is the backbone of the commune, and 2. he is old now)
4. After Lao Zhao's discharge from the Armed Forces, what two (2) things did the "organization" assign him to do?
(1. work at a textile factory [at our commune in Shenyang], and 2. become a [basic] militiaman)
5. When Lao Zhao was assigned to Shenyang/Mukden, construction was in progress. What two (2) elements did not want to see us succeed?
(1. counterrevolutionaries, and 2. bad elements)
6. The aforementioned elements started several rumors. What was the first rumor?
(the Communist Party's aim [in organizing the militia] is to protect Party interests OR is not to protect the interest of the masses)
7. What was the second rumor?
([only] the counterrevolutionary elements could raise production OR/AND raise construction)

8. What was the third rumor?
(the weapons and ammunition [of the militia] were insufficient to defend against the aggressors)
9. In the opinion of the "organization," what two (2) groups are ganging up to harass us?
(1. the class enemies, and 2. the Imperialistic aggressors)
10. Who were we supposed to ferret out?
(the spies [who were starting the rumors])
11. Twenty people were selected to go to Beijing for training. What were they supposed to learn to do?
(to collect intelligence information)
12. When does the story say that our militia units needed a few cadre?
(ten years ago)
13. Why did the "organization" say that Lao Zhao had a problem?
(his "social origin" was not too good OR/AND his grandfather was a [semi-reformed] landlord/landowner)
14. What was the status of Lao Zhao's father?
([he was a] poor peasant)
15. What had the "organization" already considered Lao Zhao to be?
(an activist/enthusiast)
16. What condition did the "organization" impose on Lao Zhao as a requisite for becoming a cadre?
([he must first] become a Communist Party member)

MST, Unit 5

17. When the foreigner first asked Lao Zhao about the weapons used by the militia, what was his answer?

([it was a] secret AND/OR [he] couldn't tell other people)

18. How much money did Lao Zhao make a month?

(over 20 dollars [20-30])

19. How much money did the foreigner offer Lao Zhao?

(500 dollars)

20. In exchange for the money, the foreigner wanted to know three things. List two (2) of the things that he wanted to know.

- (1) (how many rifles, pistols, and machine guns [weapons] [the militia had])
- (2) (where the ammunition [for the militia] was stored)
- (3) (what the secret duties [of the militia] were)

21. What information did Lao Zhao volunteer in addition to what the foreigner wanted to know (be specific)?

(how many antiaircraft and antitank guns [the militia had])

22. What did Lao Zhao, in order to make the task easier for himself, ask the foreigner to do first before they would meet again?

(write down the things he wanted to know)

23. (1) When (day and time) and (2) where was the rendezvous supposed to take place?

(1. tomorrow [at] 8:00 p.m., and 2. at Lao Zhao's office)

24. When the foreigner was handing the things to Lao Zhao, what happened?

(a man emerged [from the small room inside] and took pictures)

25. Where did the cadres take the foreigner?

(the public security officer/department)

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 听说中国的民兵用的多半是轻武器，对他们进行游击战有什么帮助？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó de mínbīng yòngde duōbàn shì qīng wǔqì, duì tāmen jìnxíng yóujīzhàn yǒu shénme bāngzhù?

2. 为什么普通民兵都是没有当过兵的青年？都是谁教他们使用武器？

Wèishénme pǔtōng mínbīng dōu shì méiyǒu dāngguo bīng de qīngnián? Dōushi shéi jiāo tāmen shǐyòng wǔqì?

3. 如果一个民兵发现外国人在搜集解放军的武器情报，他会怎么办？

Rúguǒ yíge mínbīng fāxiàn wàiguórén zài sōují Jiěfàngjūn de wǔqì qíngbào, tā huì zěnmebàn?

4. 请你说一说为什么贫农或是下中农的民兵很容易训练成一个可靠的干部？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyíshuō wèishénme pínóng huòshì xiàzhōngnóng de mínbīng hěn róngyì xùnliàn chéng yíge kěkàode gānbù?

5. 担任民兵干部的复员军人应（该）不应该懂得用机枪，高射炮等等武器？为什么？

Dānrèn mínbīng gānbù de fùyuán jūnrén yīng(gāi) bùyinggāi dǒngde yòng jīqiāng, gāoshèpào děngděng wǔqì? Wèishénme?

6. 作情报工作的人一定都是组织认为最可靠的人吗？为什么？

Zuò qíngbào gōngzuò de rén yídìng dōushi zǔzhī rènwei zuìkěkàode rén ma? Wèishénme?

7. 据说中国不会制造反坦克炮，就是轻武器用的弹药也不会制造，这是不是谣言？为什么？

Jùshuō Zhōngguó búhuì zhìzào fǎntǎnkèpào, jiùshì qīng wǔqì yòngde dànàyào yě búhuì zhìzào, zhè shì búshì yáoyán? Wèishénme?

8. 中国的反动分子也都是中国人，他们为什么替帝国主义侵略者工作？

Zhōngguóde fǎndòng fēnzǐ yě dōushì Zhōngguó rén, tāmen wèishénme tì dìguózhǔyì qīnlüèzhě gōngzuò?

9. 在中国，当领导的干部都得先当党员吗？为什么？

Zài Zhōngguó, dāng lǐngdǎode gānbù dōu dēi xiān dāng dǎngyuán ma? Wèishénme?

10. 请说一说中国民兵用的都是那些轻武器跟重武器？

Qǐng shuōyishuō Zhōngguó mínbīng yòngde dōushì nǎxiē qīng wǔqì gēn zhòng wǔqì?

11. 你认为目前中国还有很多间谍吗？他们想搜集些什么情报？

Nǐ rènwei mùqián Zhōngguó háiyǒu hěnduō jiàndié ma? Tāmen xiǎng sōujíxiē shénme qíngbào?

12. 武装民兵在进行游击战的时候用什么武器最方便，为什么？

Wǔzhuāng mínbīng zài jìnxíng yóujìzhàn de shíhou yòng shénme wǔqì zuìfāngbian, wèishénme?

13. 在中国，要是有一个有特别技能的士兵，对工作很有积极性。可是他的外祖父过去是地主，组织许他当干部吗？为什么？

Zài Zhōngguó, yàoshi yíge yǒu tèbié jìnéng de shìbīng, duì gōngzuò hěn yǒu jījīxìng. Kěshì tāde wàizǔfù guòqù shì dìzhǔ, zǔzhī xǔ tā dāng gānbù ma? Wèishénme?

14. 请你讲一讲中国民兵的干部都是怎么挑选出来的？他们应该懂得用那几种武器？

Qǐng nǐ jiǎngyíjiǎng Zhōngguó mínbīng de gānbù dōu shì zěnmē tiāoxuǎn chūlai de? Tāmen yīnggāi dǒngde yòng nǎjǐzhǒng wǔqì?

15. 受过情报训练的干部回到部队以后，他的主要任务是什么？他怎么样进行他的工作？

Shòuguò qíngbào xùnliàn de gānbù huídào bùduì yǐhòu, tāde zhǔyào rènwù shì shénme? Tā zěnmeyang jìnxíng tāde gōngzuò?

16. 听说解放军在一九四九年以前，手枪、步枪跟弹药等等都很不够用。现在都够用了，为什么？

Tīngshuō Jiěfàngjūn zài yíjiǔsìjiūnián yǐqián, shǒuqiāng, bùqiāng gēn dànnyào dēngdēng dōu hěn búgòuyòng. Xiànzài dōu gòuyòngle, wèishénme?

17. 如果你是一个民兵干部，组织要派你到敌人的部队里去当间谍，你去不去？为什么？

Rúguǒ nǐ shì yíge mínbīng gānbù, zǔzhī yào pài nǐ dào dírén de bùduìlǐ qù dāng jiàndié, nǐ qù búqù? Wèishénme?

18. 请说一说新兵在受基本训练的时候用什么武器？他们学习用这些武器的时候也用弹药吗？为什么？

Qǐng shuōyíshuō xīnbīng zài shòu jīběn xùnliàn de shíhou yòng shénme wǔqì? Tāmen xuéxí yòng zhèxiē wǔqì de shíhou yě yòng dànnyào ma? Wèishénme?

19. 担任情报工作的人要秘密地找造谣（言）的反动分子吗？为什么？

Dānrèn qíngbào gōngzuò de rén yào mìmide zhǎo zào yáo(yán) de fǎndòng fēnzǐ ma? Wèishénme?

20. 在中国，地主跟反动分子都是阶级敌人吗？为什么？

Zài Zhōngguó, dìzhǔ gēn fǎndòng fēnzǐ dōu shì jiējí dírén ma?
Wèishénme?

21. 请讲一讲为什么在战时，帝国主义常常配合反革命分子造谣来扰乱中国的社会？

Qǐng jiǎngyíjiǎng wèishénme zài zhànshí, dìguózhǔyì chángcháng pèihé fǎngémìng fēnzǐ zàoyáo lái rǎoluàn Zhōngguó de shèhuì?

22. 请说一说 一、手枪 二、步枪 三、机枪 四、高射炮，这几种武器在打击敌人的时候有什么用？

Qǐng shuōyíshuō yī, shǒuqiāng èr, bùqiāng sān, jīqiāng sì, gāoshèpào, zhèjǐzhǒng wǔqì zài dǎjī dírén de shíhou yǒu shénme yòng?

23. 如果你在中国向一个民兵打听他的部队在什么地方，用什么武器什么的，他会认为你是什么人？为什么？

Rúguǒ nǐ zài Zhōngguó xiàng yíge mínbīng dǎtīng tāde bùduì zài shénme dìfang, yòng shénme wǔqì shénmede, tā huì rènwéi nǐ shì shénme rén?
Wèishénme?

24. 据说中国的民兵有好几千万人，可是重武器很少。用他们来防御外国侵略者可靠吗？为什么？

Jùshuō Zhōngguóde mínbīng yǒu hǎojǐqiānwàn rén, kěshi zhòng wǔqì hěn shǎo. Yòng tāmen lái fángyù wàiguó qīnlüèzhě kěkào ma? Wèishénme?

25. 你认为一个在外国生的，可是在中国长大的中国青年，组织会不会征他入伍？为什么？

Nǐ rènwéi yíge zài wàiguó shēngde, kěshi zài Zhōngguó zhǎngdàde Zhōngguó qīngnián zǔzhī huì búhuì zhēng tā rùwǔ? Wèishénme?

26. 你想要是一个办事很有积极性的年轻党员，组织会派他去受情报训练吗？为什么？

Nǐ xiǎng yàoshi yíge bànshì hěn yǒu jījíxìng de niánqīng dǎngyuán, zǔzhī huì pài tā qù shòu qíngbào xùnliàn ma? Wèishénme?

27. 请你说一说中国的民兵有几类？他们在作战的时候有什么任务？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō Zhōngguóde mínbīng yǒu jǐlèi? Tāmen zài zuòzhàn de shíhou yǒu shénme rènwù?

28. 如果你是一个中国的民兵干部，有人给你很多钱向你打听民兵的情报，你告诉不告诉他？为什么？

Rúguǒ nǐ shì yíge Zhōngguóde mínbīng gānbù, yǒu rén gěi nǐ hěnduō qián xiàng nǐ dǎtīng mínbīng de qíngbào, nǐ gàosu búgàosu tā? Wèishénme?

29. 担任中国北方边防巡逻的民兵很需要反坦克炮跟高射炮吗？为什么？

Dānrèn Zhōngguó běifāng biānfāng xúnluó de mínbīng hěn xūyào fǎntǎnkèpào gēn gāoshèpào ma? Wèishénme?

30. 中国的新兵在入伍受训练的时候，干部常常告诉他们应该处处先想到国家的利益才想到自己的利益。为什么？

Zhōngguóde xīnbīng zài rùwǔ shòu xūnliàn de shíhou, gānbù chángcháng gàosu tāmen yīnggāi chùchù xiān xiǎngdào guójiāde lìyì cái xiǎngdào zìjǐde lìyì. Wèishénme?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. The missions of the militia in wartime and their responsibilities in peacetime are very different. In peacetime, they act as laborers; in wartime, they act as Regular Army personnel.
2. Our unit can be divided into cadre, common militia, armed militia, and Regular Army personnel. But only the Regular Army personnel know how to/can use machine guns and antiaircraft guns.
3. In 1944, the guerrilla warfare in China was very effective. This was because the poor and lower-middle class peasants were all very trustworthy, especially the poor peasants.
4. The cadre in our unit were all selected by the "organization." Therefore, those selected were all party members of the Communist Party. The poor and lower-middle class peasants had no chance to be selected.
5. Originally, our intelligence information was not too good. It wasn't that the intelligence information was unreliable, it was just that when we received it, it was already too late, and there was not sufficient time to classify (categorize) it.

6. The best intelligence information is collected from the poor and lower-middle class peasants. Not only are they very reliable, but they also see all of the enemy's movements, so they are considered to be our most effective spies.

7. Our unit only has rifles and pistols, we have no other weapons. The reason is that machine guns and antitank guns are too heavy. When making guerrilla warfare, the lighter the weapons we use, the better.

8. The duty of the personnel engaged in (making) guerrilla warfare is to harass the enemy. They can also often wipe out the enemy patrols if they coordinate with the poor peasants.

9. A machine gun is a very good weapon. It is much better than a rifle, but, generally speaking, it is very heavy and difficult to carry. It also uses ammunition too fast.

10. This type of rifle is very reliable. Not only is the rifle light (in weight), but the ammunition that it uses is also very light so it is very convenient to carry. When the enemy is far away, it is much more effective than a pistol.

11. In our unit, only the cadre may carry pistols. This is because they are considered the same as military officers. Also, we don't have very much pistol ammunition.

12. When we are doing military maneuvers, our patrol units are the most important units. Not only do they secretly collect intelligence information from the poor peasants, they also harass the enemy.

13. If the enemy unit is larger than our unit, then we must use guerrilla warfare. We must depend on our intelligence information and our patrol units to wipe out the enemy one by one.

14. Here we have many various kinds of weapons. We have quite a few anti-tank guns and antiaircraft guns, as well as several different kinds of machine guns. We also have quite a few hundred rifles.

15. The Chinese coastal units have several hundred thousand antiaircraft guns. In the vicinity of the seashore, they usually have several antiaircraft guns per mile (of seacoast), but according to our intelligence information, they don't have enough ammunition (to use).

16. Our coastal defense units do not have any antitank guns, only our border defense units have both antitank guns and antiaircraft guns. But in the vicinity of the seacoast, there are both border defense units and coastal defense units.

17. The standard of living of the poor and lower-middle class peasants is really pitiful, but their work is most important. If they did not industriously work everyday, then no one would have food to eat.

18. The most important duty of the party members is to reform the class enemy, counterrevolutionary elements, and other activists. If we cannot do this kind of work, the class enemies and counterrevolutionary elements will certainly reform us.

19. The intelligence information that we just collected is very clear. That enemy unit has rifles and machine guns. Moreover, it has both antitank guns and antiaircraft guns. We had best wait until midnight to charge them so that they won't be able to see us.

20. Our machine gun unit has been divided into two parts--one is called the heavy machine gun unit, and the other is called the light machine gun unit. I think that this situation is a little more effective.

21. Harrassing the enemy is a very dangerous affair. You must always be very careful, otherwise your unit will be wiped out by the enemy.

22. During wartime, all matters are dangerous. Workers, farmers, and the poor and lower-middle peasants are all easily injured. We must pay attention to protect them.

23. That man wearing the red hat is really untrustworthy. Yesterday he said that he wanted to become a Communist Party member, but our intelligence information says that he is one of the class enemies. We must be very careful with regard to what he says.

24. According to our most recent intelligence information, this farming village was wiped out by the enemy troops. I heard that quite a few farmers and poor peasants were injured.

25. When collecting intelligence information, it is very difficult to divide the reliable intelligence information from rumor, so you must be very careful. During wartime, no one knows who is trustworthy and who is unreliable.

26. General speaking, is the standard of living of the ordinary worker higher than that of the poor lower-middle class peasant? It certainly is! The workers all live in the cities, while the poor and lower-middle peasants all live in rural areas.

27. Our Regular Army units have all types of weapons. They have light ones and heavy ones; they have antiaircraft guns and antitank guns. Moreover, they have various types of rifles and pistols.

28. Our production unit has both workers and cadre. These two elements are both very important, it's just that their duties are different. Their standards of living are both the same.

29. In addition to listening to the Communist Party members, you must listen carefully to what the cadre says. Sometimes it seems that only Communist Party members and cadre have any rights, and we workers only have obligations.

30. You must pay attention to what you say here. The enemy has assigned many spies in the vicinity of this city, and if you do not speak carefully, the enemy spies will hear everything that you say. They will then give this intelligence information to the enemy.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Tīngshuō Zhōngguó Gōngchǎndǎng de jiàoyù zhèngcè shì pínxiàzhōngnóng de zǐnǚ kéyì shàng dàxué, dìzhǔ hé fǎndòngpài de zǐnǚ bùkéyì.
2. Yībānde shuō, bùduīlǐ chángcháng yǒu tì dírén gōngzuò de jiàndié, tāmen bǎ dǎtīngdào de qǐngbào mìmìde jiāogěi dírén.
3. Rúguǒ nǐ zài fú bīngyì de shíqī, zuòshì hěn yǒu nǐ kěkào, jiù kěnéng tiāo nǐ dāng gānbù.
4. Yǒurénshuō cóngqián Zhōngguó de jūnduì zhuāngbèi bútài gòu yòng, suǒyì pǔtōng mínbīng búshì rénren dōu yǒu bùqiāng de.
5. Jùshuō zài mínbīng bùduīlǐ guān dānyào de gānbù dōushi yǒu dǎngyuán lái dānrèn.
6. Yībānláishuō, zài bùduì lǐbiānr, zhǐyǒu fùzérén huòshì gānbù cái yǒu shǒuqiāng. Zhànshì búyòng shǒuqiāng.
7. Gānbù duì gāng lái shòuxùn de niánqīngrén shuō, rénren dōu děi rènzhēn xuéxí cái búhuì làngfèi guójiāde qián.

8. Tīngshuō Zhōngguó de wǔzhuāng mínbīng bùduì lǐbiānr, bǎifēnzhībǎi de gānbù shì dǎngyuán, kěshì zài pǔtōng mínbīng lǐbiānr, zhǐyǒu bǎnfēn-zhǐèrshí de gānbù shì dǎngyuán.
9. Zhōngguó mùqián yòng yìwù bīngyìzhì. Niánqīngrén mǎnle shíbasuǐ, zǔzhǐ jiù huì tōngzhì tā rùwǔ.
10. Zài bùduì lǐbiānr, qǐngbào rényuán de rènwù shì sōují yáoyán, bìngqiě zhǎochū zào yáoyán de rén.
11. Niánqīngrén rùwǔ yǐqián yídìng yào jiǎnchá tǐgé. Tǐgé jiǎnchá bùhége de rén, qítāde tiáojiàn hǎo yě bùnéng dāngbīng.
12. Yìbānde shuō, dàbùduìlǐ chángcháng yǒu jiàndié, suóyì zǔzhǐ pài qǐngbào rényuán lái zhùyì tāmen de huódòng.
13. Xiǎo Zhāng zài bùduìlǐ gōngzuò hěn yǒujíjìxìng, gānbù dōu hěn xǐhuan tā; kěshì tāmen bùzhīdao shíjìshàng Xiǎo Zhāng shì dírén pàilai sōují qǐngbào de jiàndié.
14. Yóujíduì zài jīnxíng yóujízhàn de shíhou zhǐ dài qǐngwǔqǐ. Tāmen de dòngzuò hěn kuài, suóyì dírén de zhèngguǐjūn bùróngyì xiǎomiè tāmen.
15. Pínxìazhōngnóng zài Zhōngguó jiěfàng yǐqián, shēnghuó zuì kǔ. Suóyì jiěfàng yǐhòu, tāmen zuì zhǐchí Zhōngguó Gòngchǎndǎng de zhèngcè.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate" because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 5

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

A Suzhou militia cadre, Zhào Zhìyún, and her American visitor continue their discussion on China's militia.

1. D: I suppose, then, that your factory has a militia unit?

Z: 当然了, 我们的工厂也有一个民兵部队。

Dāngránle, wǒmende gōngchǎng yě yǒu yíge mínbīng bùduì.

2. D: How many persons are there in your factory's militia unit?

Z: 一共有二百二十六个人; 都是这个工厂的工人。

Yígòng yǒu yìbǎièrshíliùge rén; dōushi zhège gōngchǎngde gōngren.

3. D: Are very many of this militia women?

Z: 差不多有三十个女民兵。

Chàbuduō yǒu sānshíge nǚ mínbīng.

4. D: Do you have any militia who were formerly Regular Army?

Z: 有十个退伍军人。

Yǒu shíge tuìwǔ jūnrén.

5. D: Are all of the militia in this unit Party members?

Z: 不都是党员。干部都是党员, 还有几个民兵是党员。

Bùdōu shi dǎngyuán. Gānbù dōu shi dǎngyuán, háiyǒu jǐge mínbīng shi dǎngyuán.

6. D: How many cadre does this unit have?

Z: 一共有十三个干部。

Yígòng yǒu shísānge gānbù.

7. D: How about the "social origin" of this unit's militia?
Z: 他们大部分是工人。也有贫下中农。
Tāmen dàbùfen shì gōngren. Yě yǒu pínxiàzhōngnóng.
8. D: How about this unit's weapons?
Z: 差不多都是轻武器，象步枪、机枪、手枪，等等。
Chābuduō dōu shì qīng wǔqì, xiàng bùqiāng, jīqiāng, shǒuqiāng, dēngdēng.
9. D: Don't you have any heavy weapons?
Z: 我们这个部队没有。在苏州的一个民兵部队有高射炮。在郊区的几个民兵部队有反坦克炮。
Wǒmen zhège bùduì méiyǒu. Zài Sūzhōu de yíge mínbīng bùduì yǒu gāoshèpào. Zài jiāoqūde jǐge mínbīng bùduì yǒu fǎntǎnkèpào.
10. D: Are the wartime missions of the militia the same as in peacetime?
Z: 在战时，最重要的任务是给正规军搜集情报，用游击战扰乱敌人；并且还得跟平时一样跟正规军合作负责边防、海防的工作。
Zài Zhànshí, zuì zhòngyào de rènwù shì gěi zhèngguījūn sōují qíngbào, yòng yóujìzhàn rǎoluàn dírén; bìngqiě hái děi gēn píngshí yíyàng gēn zhèngguījūn hézuò fùzé biānfáng, hǎifáng de gōngzuò.
11. D: Then do you think that your factory's militia would perform well if called upon?
Z: 我们这个部队很可靠。保卫祖国的工作一定做得很好。
Wǒmen zhège bùduì hěn kěkào. Bǎowèi zǔguó de gōngzuò yídìng zuòde hěn hǎo.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: A militiaman in Hubei Province has been called before a military interrogation team consisting of one cadre and one military officer to answer questions concerning the passing of military information to foreign governments.

Role 1: Comrade Zhao served in the Regular Army for four years with an armored (tank) unit near Beijing, after which he was assigned by the "organization" to Hubei as a militiaman. After serving as a militiaman for several years, he became a Party member, and has just been selected by the "organization" to become a cadre (due to his spotless record). Two days ago, he met an American businessman in a small bar in a nearby town who insisted on buying him beers and talking to Zhao about his background. Since Zhao was eager to practice his English (which he has been studying at night), he told the American about his family, where he went to school as a young man, etc. But when the American asked about the situation in his militia unit, Zhao refused to say anything more and left the bar.

Role 2: Qin is an officer in the PRC Army. He is convinced that the American was a spy, and was only interested in collecting intelligence information concerning the local militia units. He wants to find out what the American asked Zhao, as well as what Zhao told the American. He also wants to find out who the American was (i.e., general description, where the American is staying in Hubei, etc.) in order to find and question him. He feels that it is most important to be sure that Zhao did not give away any information concerning weapons types and numbers, or the training of the local militia.

Role 3: Comrade Huang is the cadre interrogator involved in the scenario. His primary concern is the trustworthiness of Zhao, as he has to decide whether Zhao will be allowed to remain as a militiaman, or be sent back to Beijing for further questioning. He has heard from some of the other militiaman that Zhao is an activist, and so he wants to explore Zhao's background (i.e., family, friends, tour in the Regular Army and previous work, Party affiliation, selection as a cadre, whether he knows any bad elements or activists, etc.) and obtain information on which to base his decision.

Scenario 2

Situation: Two members of the Chinese Armed Forces have met in a small village in Southern China to debrief a spy who has just returned from observing an enemy training/reserve armor (tank) unit behind the enemy lines. This training/reserve unit is considered to be very important as a major attack is planned in the direction of the enemy unit.

Role 1: Comrade Li has been involved in intelligence gathering activities in the enemy rear area for the past three months. His major area of concern was the enemy armor (tank) unit (officially designated as Unit 377) located three miles south of Huameicun. While engaged in these spy activities, he posed as a common laborer, and worked at the airfield near the tank unit every day. Most of his intelligence was collected from the poor and lower-middle class peasants with whom he ate lunch every day. Initially, he would listen to what they said, and then go to see the situation in person (for verification). But eventually, after the first week, he found their intelligence information to be very reliable, and so would just collect the information at lunch. The peasants were able to keep Li informed as to the number of tanks, cars, antitank guns, etc. assigned to the enemy unit.

Role 2: Comrade Yang is the local Beijing representative of the cadre/militia. He is interested in exploring the possibility of using the poor peasants to organize a guerrilla unit in the mountains near Huameicun. He needs to find out how many rifles and pistols the peasants already have, and how many they need. He needs to know the number and schedules of the enemy patrols in the vicinity of the village, as well as the composition of the patrols. He also wants to question Li about the backgrounds of some of the peasants in order to decide whether any of them could become cadre to lead the guerrilla unit, or whether cadre must be assigned to help the peasants from the guerrilla unit.

Role 3: Comrade Zhao is the Regular Army unit's debriefing officer. He wishes to discover the number of antitank guns, antiaircraft guns, tanks, and machine guns that Unit 377 has, as well as the amounts of ammunition for each weapon. He also wants to know how many heavy tanks assigned to the unit have completed their driver training. He must finally assess the enemy's effectiveness by knowing how long it takes the enemy to repair a tank that has been damaged or to send another tank to the front of the unit.

Scenario 3

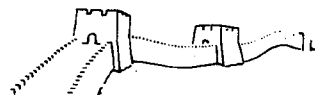
Situation: A cadre leader from Beijing is visiting a military base near the Sino-Soviet border. There have been several large-scale military exercises conducted by the Soviets in the last month, so the cadre representative has been assigned by his superiors in Beijing to ascertain the readiness of the base.

Role 1: Comrade Jiāng is the cadre representative from Beijing, who has come to discuss the unit's state of readiness. In order to evaluate properly, he must find out how many antitank guns, antiaircraft guns, heavy and light machine guns, etc. are available for use by the unit. He also needs to know how effective the unit's patrols have been in collecting intelligence information, and whether the number of patrols have been increased in response to the Soviet activities. Finally, he needs to find out what additional items they need in order to become 100 percent effective (with respect to weapons and personnel).

Role 2: Comrade Wáng is the military officer assigned to escort Comrade Jiāng around the camp and to answer any questions that he may have concerning the unit. The condition of the camp is fairly good. Altogether the unit has over 300 light machine guns and 60 heavy machine guns, along with 2000 rifles and pistols, and there is sufficient ammunition for all weapons. Last week, 50 new antitank guns arrived, and more are expected next week. However, they have no antiaircraft guns, nor have any antiaircraft gun units been assigned to their unit. The unit commander wants Hu to stress the importance to the Beijing representative of having a tank unit (of at least 15 tanks) assigned to their unit, as well as the units need for more machine gun ammunition (90,000 rounds). His unit sent a notice requesting more ammunition and tanks to Beijing three months ago, but the unit has heard nothing so far. Patrols have been increased from two daily to six, and they have found the local peasants very reliable in providing intelligence information about the Russians.

UNIT 6

DIALOGUE



1. A: 你们中国部队的基本训练都包括些什么?
B: 我随便说几个吧。除了操练以外, 还有射击、刺杀、投弹等等。
2. A: 呵! 真不少啊! 你给我讲讲, 行不行?
B: 操练当然是新兵最先要学习的。包括立正、稍息和其他的动作。
3. A: 听说解放以前你们不太着重立正、稍息, 这类的动作。
B: 不是不着重。不过, 那个时候我们的部队多半儿是游击队。跟反动派打仗, 常常打游击战。没有工夫练习立正、稍息, 什么的。
4. A: 你们着重射击吗?
B: 我们要每一个军人都能掌握射击的技术。要不然, 不但浪费子弹, 也不能把敌人杀死。
5. A: 是啊! 你刚才说的“刺杀”和“投弹”是什么意思呢?
B: “刺杀”就是先上刺刀, 再用刺刀把敌人杀死。
“投弹”就是扔手榴弹。
6. A: 我以为用飞机轰炸才叫“投弹”呢。
B: 你说的并没错。不过, 基本训练的时候, “投弹”只意味着扔手榴弹。

7. A: 也有战术训练吗?

B: 当然, 得有。要不然怎么能打仗呢?

1. A: Nǐmen Zhōngguó bùduìde jīběn
xùnliàn dōu bāokuò xiē shénme? What does the basic training of the
Chinese troops include?
- B: Wǒ suǐbiàn shuō jǐge ba.
Chúle cāoliàn yǐwài, hái
yǒu shèjǐ, cìshā, tóudàn,
děngděng. Let me mention a few off the top
of my head. In addition to drills,
there is marksmanship, bayonet
practice, throwing hand grenades,
etc.
2. A: Hē! Zhēn bùshǎo a! Nǐ gěi
wǒ jiāngjiāng, xíng buxíng? Gee! (That's) really quite a lot.
Can you tell me about them, O.K.?
- B: Cāoliàn dāngrán shì xīn bīng
zuì xiān yào xuéxí de.
Bāokuò lìzhèng, shāoxī, hé
qítāde dòngzuò. Drills is, of course, the very
first thing a recruit has to
learn. It includes attention,
at ease, and other (body) move-
ments.
3. A: Tīngshuō jiěfàng yǐqián nǐmen
bútài zhuózhòng lìzhèng,
shāoxī, zhèilèide dòngzuò. I heard that in the pre-Liberation
days, you didn't stress movements
such as "attention," "at ease,"
etc., too much.
- B: Búshì bùzhuózhòng. Búguò,
nèige shíhou wǒmende bùduì
duōbàn shì yóujīduì. Gēn
fāndòngpài dǎ zhàng, cháng-
cháng dǎ yóujīzhàn. Méiyǒu
gōngfu liànxí lìzhèng, shāo-
xī, shénmede. It isn't that we didn't stress
them. Nevertheless, at that time
most of our troops were guerrillas.
And when we were fighting the
reactionaries, we frequently went
into guerrilla warfare. We did
not have the free time to prac-
tice "attention," "at ease," etc.
4. A: Nǐmen zhuózhòng shèjǐ ma? Do you emphasize marksmanship
(shooting)?
- B: Wǒmen yào měiyíge jūnrén dōu
néng zhǎngwò shèjǐ de jìshù.
Yàoburán, búdàn làngfèi zǐdàn,
yě bùnéng bǎ díren shāsi. We want every military man to
master the skills of shooting
(marksmanship). Otherwise he'd
not only waste bullets, but also
wouldn't be able to kill the
enemy.

5. A: Shì a! Nǐ gāngcái shuōde
"cìshā" hé "tóu dàn" shì
shénme yìsi ne?
B: "Cìshā" jiù shì xiān shang
cìdāo, zài yòng cìdāo bǎ
díren shāsi. "Tóu dàn"
jiù shì rēng shǒuliúdàn.
6. A: Wǒ yīwéi yòng fēijī hōngzhà
cái jiào "tóu dàn" ne.
B: Nǐ shuōde bìng méicuò. Bú-
guò, jīběn xùnliàn de shí-
hou, "tóu dàn" zhǐ yīwèizhe
rēng shǒuliúdàn.
7. A: Yě yǒu zhànshù xùnliàn ma?
B: Dāngrán, děi yǒu. Yàoburán
zěnme néng dǎ zhàng ne?
- Yes, indeed! (By the way), "cìshā"
and "tóu dàn" that you just
mentioned, what do they mean?
"Cìshā" is to fix bayonet first,
and then kill the enemy with the
bayonet. "Tóu dàn" is to throw
hand grenades.
- I thought only bombing by airplanes
could be called "tóu dàn."
What you said was not wrong really.
However, in basic training "tóu
dàn" only means to throw hand
grenades.
- Do you also have training in
tactics?
Of course, we've got to have it.
Otherwise, how could we fight
a war?

VOCABULARY

包括	bāokuò	to include
并不/并没	bìng bù(′)/bìng méi	definitely not, by no means, really not, certainly not
操练	cāoliàn	to drill, drills (military)
刺杀	cìshā	(the skill of) killing with a bayonet
刺刀	cìdāo	bayonet (C: bǎ)
打仗	dǎ zhàng	to fight (a war or a battle)
打游击战	dǎ yóujīzhàn	to fight guerrilla warfare/ a guerrilla war
动作	dòngzuò	(bodily or physical) movements (of a person)
都...些什么	dōu...xiē shénme?	all (used in questions)
反动派	fǎndòngpài	reactionaries
轰炸	hōngzhà	to bomb (by airplanes)
浪费	làngfèi	to waste
练习	liànxí	to practice (for the purpose of achieving mastery)
立正	lìzhèng	"attention;" to stand at attention
扔	rēng	to throw, to cast (away)
上刺刀	shàng cìdāo	to fix bayonet (military)
稍息	shāoxī	"at ease;" to stand at ease
杀死	shāsǐ	to kill (premeditated killing with a weapon)
射击	shèjī	to shoot, to fire, shooting
手榴弹	shǒuliúdàn	hand grenade (C: kē)
投弹	tóu dàn	to throw a hand grenade (a term used in military training); to bomb; to drop bombs

MST, Unit 6

要	yào	should; to have to
以 为	yǐwéi	to think, to consider, to presume
意 味 着	yìwèizhe	to mean, to imply, to signify
游 击 队	yóujīduì	guerrilla(s), guerrilla unit(s)
掌 握	zhǎngwò	to gain control of, to master
着 重	zhuózhòng	to emphasize, to stress
子 弹	zǐdàn	bullet, shell (for shotguns only) (C: fā)

STORY COMPREHENSION

解放以后，反动派的部队差不多都被我们消灭了。我们的解放军不再是一个只会打游击战的军队，现在得用新武器、新战术来保卫国家。一方面不让帝国主义侵略我们，一方面要注意反革命分子的活动。我们军队的基本训练也搞得一天比一天好。我是好几十年以前参军的；那时候，我们的基本训练没有现在的这么好，包括的东西也不多，可是我们都有积极性，学习得都不错，要不然，怎么能把反动派的军队都消灭了呢？

我还记得，我入伍的时候才十六岁。我父亲是贫农，被反动派杀死了。我给一个地主种白菜、养猪。跟我一起工作的还有三个十七、八岁的青年。那个地主剥削我们，每天

Jiěfàng yǐhòu, fǎndòngpài de bùduì chābùduō dōu bèi wǒmen xiāomièle. Wǒmende Jiěfàngjūn búzài shì yíge zhǐ huì dǎ yóujīzhàn de jūnduì, xiànzài děi yòng xīn wǔqì, xīn zhànshù lái bǎowèi guójiā. Yífangmiàn búràng Dìguózhǔyì qīnlüè wǒmen, yífangmiàn yào zhùyì fǎngémìngfēnzǐ de huódòng. Wǒmen jūnduìde jībēn xùnliàn yě gǎode yìtiān bǐ yìtiān hǎo. Wǒ shì hǎojǐshínián yǐqián cānjūnde; nàshíhou, wǒmende jībēn xùnliàn méiyǒu xiànzàide zhème hǎo, bāokuòde dōngxi yě bùduō, kěshì wǒmen dōu yǒu jījīxìng, xuéxíde dōu búcuò; yàoburán, zěnme néng bǎ fǎndòngpàide jūnduì dōu xiāomièle ne?

Wǒ hái jìde, wǒ rùwǔ de shíhou cái shíliùsuì. Wǒ fùqīn shì pínóng, bèi fǎndòngpài shāsǐle. Wǒ gěi yíge dìzhǔ zhòng báicài, yǎng zhū. Gēn wǒ yìqǐ gōngzuò de háiyou sānge shíqī, bāsuì de qīngnián. Nàge dìzhǔ bōxuē wǒmen, měitiān zhǐ gěi wǒmen yí dùn

只给我们一顿饭，每个人只许吃一碗。每个月给我们五块钱，叫我们四个人自己分。我知道地主剥削我们，可是不敢说话。有一天，一个姓王的青年跟我说，咱们不能再让反动派的地主剥削咱们了。为了群众的利益、为了贫下中农的利益，我们应该消灭反动份子和地主。我说我才十六岁，有什么办法消灭他们呢？小王说，如果大家都参加共产党的军队，咱们就一定能把反动分子消灭，建设一个新中国。我听了以后，很高兴，就请他介绍我参加共产党和游击队。不久，就秘密地到延安去入伍了。

我入伍以后，受了三个星期的基本训练。操练了两个钟头的“立正”，“稍息”，等等，就马上学习怎么射击。我觉得“立正”，“稍息”，什么的很有意思，很想多操

fàn, měige rén zhǐxǔ chī yìwǎn.
 Měige yuè gěi wǒmen wǔkuài qián,
 jiào wǒmen sìge rén zìjǐ fēn. Wǒ
 zhīdao dìzhǔ bōxuē wǒmen, kěshi bùgǎn
 shuōhuà. Yǒuyìtiān, yíge xìng Wáng
 de qīngnián gēn wǒ shuō, zánmen
 bùnéng zài ràng fǎndòngpài de dìzhǔ
 bōxuē zánmen le. Wèile qúnzhòngde
 lìyì, wèile pínxiàzhōngnóngde lìyì,
 wǒmen yīnggāi xiāomiè fǎndòngfènzi
 hé dìzhǔ. Wǒ shuō wǒ cái shíliùsuì,
 yǒu shénme bànfǎ xiāomiè tāmen ne?
 Xiǎo Wáng shuō, rúguǒ dàjiā dōu cān-
 jiā Gòngchǎndǎng de jūnduì, zánmen
 jiù yíding néng bǎ fǎndòngfènzi xiāo-
 miè, jiànshè yíge xīn Zhōngguó. Wǒ
 tīngle yǐhòu, hěn gāoxìng, jiù qǐng
 tā jièshào wǒ cānjiā Gòngchǎndǎng hé
 yóujiǔduì. Bùjiǔ, jiù mìmìde dào
 Yánān qù rùwǔ le.

Wǒ rùwǔ yǐhòu, shòule sānge
 xīngqī de jīběn xùnliàn. Cāoliànle
 liǎngge zhōngtóu de "lìzhèng", "shāo-
 xī", dēngdēng, jiù mǎshàng xuéxí
 zěnmē shèjī. Wǒ juéde "lìzhèng",
 "shāoxī", shénmede hěn yǒuyìsi, hěn
 xiǎng duō cāoliàn yìliǎngtiān, kěshi

练一两天，可是干部认为这些动作并不重要，不必浪费时间。我以为射击很简单，不必用很多时候，但是干部非常注意这个技术，要每一个人都掌握了以后才教别的技术。干部说，“如果我们受训的时候掌握了射击的技术，打仗的时候就不会浪费子弹，不浪费子弹就是替共产党省钱。将来共产党就可以用省下来的钱建设祖国。”我们都觉得干部说的很对，大家都努力地学习射击的技术。掌握了以后，就学投弹跟刺杀。但是我上刺刀上得太慢，扔手榴弹扔得不够远，练习了好几天才能掌握。

我参军的时候，日本侵略中国。飞机天天来轰炸，杀死了很多人。共产党一方面跟反动派打仗，一方面跟日本打仗。所以干部说，反动派和日本都是我们的敌人。有一天，我看见干部陪

gānbù rènwéi zhèxiē dòngzuò bìng
búzhòngyào, búbì làngfèi shíjiān.
Wǒ yǐwéi shèjī hěn jiǎndān, búbì
yòng hěnduō shíhou, dànshi gānbù
fēicháng zhùyì zhège jìshù, yào
měiyíge rén dōu zhǎngwòle yǐhòu cái
jiāo biéde jìshù. Gānbù shuō, "Rúguǒ
wǒmen shòuxùn de shíhou zhǎngwòle
shèjī de jìshù, dǎzhàng de shíhou
jiù búhuì làngfèi zǐdàn, búlàngfèi
zǐdàn jiùshì tì Gòngchǎndǎng shěng
qián. Jiānglái Gòngchǎndǎng jiù kěyǐ
yòng shěngxiàlai de qián jiànshè
zǔguó." Wǒmen dōu juéde gānbù shuōde
hěn duì, dàjiā dōu nǚlìde xuéxí shèjī
de jìshù. Zhǎngwòle yǐhòu, jiù xué
tóudàn gēn cìshā. Dànshi wǒ shàng
cìdāo shàngde tài màn, rēng shǒuliú-
dàn rēngde búgòu yuǎn, liànxíle hǎo-
jǐtiān cái néng zhǎngwò.

Wǒ cānjūn de shíhou, Rìběn qīn-
lüè Zhōngguó. Fēijī tiāntiān lái
hōngzhà, shāsǐle hěnduō Zhōngguó rén.
Gòngchǎndǎng yìfāngmian gēn fǎndòngpài
dǎzhàng, yìfāngmiàn gēn Rìběn dǎzhàng.
Suǒyǐ gānbù shuō, fǎndòngpài hé Rìběn
dōushi wǒmende dírén. Yǒuyìtiān, wǒ

着三、四个日本人到我们的部队来参观。我问干部，“从前你们不是说过日本是我们的敌人吗？怎么今天有日本人来参观呢？”干部说，“你误会我们的意思了。我们说过日本是中国的敌人。但是那并不意味着日本人都是我们的敌人。那些来参观的日本同志都是日本共产党的党员。最近有好几千个日本同志到中国来帮我们打仗。他们是咱们的朋友，不是敌人。侵略中国的是日本政府，不是日本人。”干部给我讲了以后，我还是不太明白可是看见他很忙，所以没敢请求他给我多讲。

受完了基本训练以后，组织把我分派到上海附近的一个游击队的单位。那时候日本已经把南京跟上海都占了。我秘密地到了南京以后，从南京坐汽车到上海去。到了上海，刚要下车，有一个

kànjian gānbù péizhe sān, sìge Rìběn rén dào wǒmende bùduì lái cānguān. Wǒ wèn gānbù, "Cóngqián nǐmen búshì shuōguo Rìběn shì zánmende dírén ma? Zěnme jīntiān yǒu Rìběn rén lái cānguān ne?" Gānbù shuō, "Nǐ wùhuì wǒmende yìsi le. Wǒmen shuōguo Rìběn shì Zhōngguóde dírén. Dànshì nà bìng búyìwèizhe Rìběn rén dōushi wǒmende dírén. Nàxiē lái cānguānde Rìběn tóngzhì dōushi Rìběn Gòngchǎndǎngde dǎngyuán. Zuìjìn yǒu hǎojǐqiānge Rìběn tóngzhì dào Zhōngguó lái bāng wǒmen dǎzhàng. Tāmen shì zánmende péngyou, búshì dírén. Qīnlüè Zhōngguó de shì Rìběn zhèngfǔ, búshì Rìběn rén." Gānbù gěi wǒ jiǎngle yǐhòu, wǒ hái shì bútài míngbai, kěshi kànjian tā hěn máng, suǒyǐ méigǎn qǐngqiú tā gěi wǒ duōjiǎng.

Shòuwánle jīběn xùnliàn yǐhòu, zǔzhī bǎ wǒ fēnpài dào Shànghǎi fùjìn de yíge yóujiǔduì de dānwèi. Nàshíhou Rìběn yǐjīng bǎ Nánjīng gēn Shànghǎi dōu zhànle. Wǒ mìmìde dào le Nánjīng yǐhòu, cóng Nánjīng zuò qìchē dào Shànghǎi qù. Dào le Shànghǎi, gāng

中国警察陪着一个人走过来问我是做什么的。我说，我是工人，到上海来看父母。那个中国警察说，“我们知道你是共产党，跟我们走。”我知道他们把我带到警察局去以后，一定会把我杀死，所以马上把刺刀拿出来杀死了那个中国警察跟日本人。汽车里头的人都是中国人，司机也是中国人，他们看见我杀死两个人，都叫我快一点儿离开，我就马上走了。

yào xiàchē, yǒu yíge Zhōngguó jǐngchá
péizhe yíge Rìběn rén zǒuguòlái wèn
wǒ shì zuòshénme de. Wǒ shuō, wǒ shì
gōngrén, dào Shànghǎi lái kàn fùmǔ.
Nàge Zhōngguó jǐngchá shuō, "Wǒmen
zhīdao nǐ shì Gòngchǎndǎng, gēn wǒmen
zǒu." Wǒ zhīdao tāmen bǎ wǒ dài dào
jǐngchájú qù yǐhòu, yíding huì bǎ
wǒ shāsi, suǒyǐ mǎshang bǎ cìdāo
náchūlai, shāsi le nàge Zhōngguó
jǐngchá gēn Rìběn rén. Qìchē lǐtòude
rén dōushi Zhōngguó rén, sījī yěshi
Zhōngguó rén, tāmen kànjian wǒ shāsi
liǎngge rén, dōu jiào wǒ kuàiyídiǎnr
líkāi, wǒ jiù mǎshang zǒule.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS

for

STORY COMPREHENSION

1. Before the People's Liberation Army came into existence, what kind of warfare was the speaker's unit limited to?
2. In addition to preventing the imperialists from committing aggression against us, what other function did the People's Liberation Army have?
3. When did the speaker join the Armed Forces?
4. How did the quality of the speaker's basic training compare with the basic training of today?
5. How old was the speaker when he enlisted?
6. a. What was the occupation/status of the speaker's father?

b. What happened to the speaker's father?

7. a. What two (2) specific things did the speaker do for a living before he joined the Armed Forces?
 - b. For whom did the speaker work?
8. What did the speaker think about the treatment he and his fellow workers received from the person they worked for?
9. In whose interests did the young man named Wang tell the speaker they should kill the reactionary elements?
10. What was Wang's suggestion as to how they could wipe out the reactionary elements and build a new China?
11. How long was the speaker's basic training?
12. On what activity did the trainees spend only two hours?
13. According to the cadre, why was marksmanship very important?
14. a. In what technique was the speaker too slow?
 - b. Initially, how was the speaker's skill at throwing hand grenades?

15. When the speaker joined the Armed Forces, what two (2) enemies/people were they fighting?
16. The cadre told the trainees that Japan was China's enemy. According to the cadre, what did they say was not implied in this statement?
17. Who were the Japanese visitors?
18. Why didn't the speaker dare to ask the cadre to explain in more detail?
19. Where was the speaker assigned after his basic training?
20. What was the status of Nanjing at that time?
21. Before the speaker arrived at his assignment, where did he go first?
22. How did the speaker get to his assignment location?
23. Who came over to him when he was about to get off?
24. Why did the speaker tell them he was there?
25. What did the speaker do to these people?

STORY COMPREHENSION

Answers To Questions

1. Before the People's Liberation Army came into existence, what kind of warfare was the speaker's unit limited to?
(guerrilla [warfare])
2. In addition to preventing the imperialists from committing aggression against us, what other function did the People's Liberation Army have?
(to watch/pay attention to [the activities of] the counterrevolutionaries)
3. When did the speaker join the Armed Forces?
(quite a few [tens of] years ago)
4. How did the quality of the speaker's basic training compare with the basic training of today?
([it was] not as good [as now] OR [it] didn't include as many things [subjects/techniques as now])
5. How old was the speaker when he enlisted?
(16 [years old])
6. a. What was the occupation/status of the speaker's father?
(poor peasant)
b. What happened to the speaker's father?
([he was] killed [by reactionaries])
7. a. What two (2) specific things did the speaker do for a living before he joined the Armed Forces?
(1. planted cabbage, and 2. raised pigs)

- b. For whom did the speaker work?
(a landlord/landowner)
8. What did the speaker think about the treatment he and his fellow workers received from the person they worked for?
(he exploited them)
9. In whose interests did the young man named Wang tell the speaker they should kill the reactionary elements?
([in the interests of both] the masses and the poor lower-middle class peasants)
10. What was Wang's suggestion as to how they could wipe out the reactionary elements and build a new China?
([everyone should] join the Communist Party)
11. How long was the speaker's basic training?
(3 weeks)
12. On what activity did the trainees spend only two hours?
(drill OR "attention," "at ease," etc.)
13. According to the cadre, why was marksmanship very important?
(cannot waste bullets in combat OR by not wasting bullets, they were saving the money of the Communist Party OR the money that the Communist Party saved on bullets could be used to rebuild [a new] China)
14. a. In what technique was the speaker too slow?
([in] fixing bayonet[s])
- b. Initially, how was the speaker's skill at throwing hand grenades?
([he] could not throw [them] far enough)

MST, Unit 6

15. When the speaker joined the Armed Forces, what two (2) enemies/people were they fighting?
(1. the Japanese, and 2. the reactionaries)
16. The cadre told the trainees that Japan was China's enemy. According to the cadre, what did they say was not implied in this statement?
([that] all Japanese are their enemy)
17. Who were the Japanese visitors?
(members of the Japanese Communist Party)
18. Why didn't the speaker dare to ask the cadre to explain in more detail?
([the cadre] was very busy)
19. Where was the speaker assigned after his basic training?
(in the vicinity of Shanghai)
20. What was the status of Nanjing at that time?
([it was] occupied [by the Japanese])
21. Before the speaker arrived at his assignment, where did he go first?
([to] Nanjing)
22. How did the speaker get to his assignment location?
([by] car OR bus)
23. Who came over to him when he was about to get off?
(a Japanese [accompanied by/with] and a Chinese policeman)
24. Why did the speaker tell them he was there?
([he was there] to see his parents)

MST, Unit 6

25. What did the speaker do to these people?

(killed them [both with a bayonet])

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 为什么在打仗的时候有步枪跟手榴弹等等的武器，士兵还得练习使用刺刀刺杀的技术？

Wèishénme zài dǎzhàng de shíhou yǒu bùqiāng gēn shǒuliúdàn dēngdēngde wǔqì, shìbīng hái děi liànxí shǐyòng cìdāo cìshā de jìshù?

2. 一般地说，士兵在学习步枪射击的时期，干部也教他们掌握上刺刀的技术，为什么？

Yībānde shuō, shìbīng zài xuéxí bùqiāng shèjī de shíqī, gàn bù yě jiāo tāmen zhǎngwò shàng cìdāo de jìshù, wèishénme?

3. “立正”跟“稍息”是两个不同的动作吗？你是在什么时候学习这两个动作的？

"Lì zhèng" gēn "Shāo xī" shì liǎngge bùtóngde dòngzuò ma? Nǐ shì zài shénme shíhou xuéxí zhè liǎngge dòngzuò de?

4. 你知道不知道在什么地方最适合打游击战？是在山上还是在平原上？为什么？

Nǐ zhīdao bùzhīdao zài shénme dìfang zuì shìhé dǎ yóujīzhàn? Shì zài shānshang hái shì zài píngyuánshang? Wèishénme?

5. 听说在一九四九年以前，共产党都是用游击队来打击反动派的正规军。为什么？

Tīngshuō zài Yījiūsìjiūnián yǐqián, Gòngchǎndǎng dōu shì yòng yóujīduì lái dǎjī fǎndòngpài de zhèngguījūn. Wèishénme?

6. 扔手榴弹有技术吗？请你说一说。

Rēng shǒuliúdàn yǒu jìshù ma? Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō.

7. 如果你在打仗的时候，敌人用刺刀刺杀你，不巧，你手枪的子弹也用完了，你怎么办？

Rúguǒ nǐ zài dǎzhàng de shíhou, dírén yòng cìdāo cìshā nǐ, bùqiǎo, nǐ shǒuqiāng de zìdàn yě yòngwánle, nǐ zěnmebàn?

8. 听说中国的游击队很会打仗，反动派的正规军常常被他们消灭。为什么？
Tīngshuō Zhōngguóde yóujīduì hěn huì dǎzhàng, fǎndòngpàide zhèngguījūn chángcháng bèi tāmen xiāomiè. Wèishénme?
9. 请你说一说“游击队”跟“民兵”有什么不同？
Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō "yóujīduì" gēn "mínbīng" yǒu shénme bùtóng?
10. 中国的干部常常告诉新兵，在射击练习的时候不要浪费子弹，为什么？
Zhōngguó de gānbù chángcháng gāosu xīnbīng, zài shèjī liànxí de shíhou búyào làngfèi zǐdàn, wèishénme?
11. 你受扔手榴弹训练的时候，最远的一次你扔了多少米？
Nǐ shòu rēng shǒuliúdàn xùnliàn de shíhou, zuìyuǎnde yíci nǐ rēngle duōshǎo mǐ?
12. 听说中国民兵受步枪训练的时候，除了学习射击敌人以外，也学习打敌人的飞机。为什么？
Tīngshuō Zhōngguó mínbīng shòu bùqiāng xùnliàn de shíhou, chúle xuéxí shèjī dírén yǐwài, yě xuéxí dǎ dírénde fēijī. Wèishénme?
13. 去轰炸敌人的部队以前，应该派间谍搜集好他们的军事情报吗？为什么？
Qù hōngzhà dírénde bùduì yǐqián, yīnggāi pài jiàndié sōujíhǎo tāmen de jūnshì qíngbào ma? Wèishénme?
14. 有人说练习上刺刀不难，可是掌握用刺刀杀人的动作很难。对不对？为什么？
Yǒurén shuō liànxí shàng cìdāo bùnán, kěshì zhǎngwò yòng cìdāo shā rén de dòngzuò hěn nán. Duì búduì? Wèishénme?
15. 在中国，如果组织挑选你当干部，这意味着什么？
Zài Zhōngguó, rúguǒ zǔzhī tiāoxuǎn nǐ dāng gānbù, zhè yìwèizhe shénme?

16. 你认为阶级敌人都包括些什么人？这些人可靠不可靠？为什么？

Nǐ rènwéi jiējí dírén dōu bāokuò xiē shénme rén? Zhèxiē rén kěkào bùkěkào? Wèishénme?

17. 听说在一起操练反坦克炮的士兵，很着重动作的配合。为什么？

Tīng shuō zài yìqǐ cāoliàn fǎntǎnkèpào de shìbīng, hěn zhuózhòng dòngzuòde pèihé. Wèishénme?

18. 正规军打仗跟打游击战不一样吗？为什么？请说一说。Zhèngguījūn dǎzhàng gēn dǎ yóujīzhàn bùyíyàng ma? Wèishénme? Qǐng shuōyishuō.

19. 请讲一讲为什么搜集敌人打仗计划的情报非常有用？Qǐng jiǎngyìjiǎng wèishénme sōují dírén dǎzhàng jìhuà de qíngbào fēicháng yǒuyòng?

20. 入伍训练的时候，你喜欢操练立正、稍息的动作还是练习扔手榴弹的技术？为什么？

Rùwǔ xùnlìan de shíhou, nǐ xǐhuan cāoliàn lìzhèng, shāoxī de dòngzuò háishi liàn xí rēng shǒuliúdàn de jìshù? Wèishénme?

21. 听说中国解放军里也有情报人员。请说一说他们的任务是什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó Jiěfàngjūnlǐ yě yǒu qíngbào rényuán. Qǐng shuōyishuō tāmen de rènwù shì shénme?

22. 如果发现了敌人派来造谣的间谍就马上把他杀死，对不对？为什么？

Rúguǒ fāxiànle dírén pàilái zàoyáode jiàndié jiù mǎshàng bǎ tā shāsi, duì buduì? Wèishénme?

23. 很多人不明白，中国的游击队并没有重武器，弹药也不够用，可是常常能消灭反动派的大部队。请你说说看为什么？

Hěnduō rén bù míngbai, Zhōngguó de yóujīduì bìng méiyǒu zhòng wǔqì, dàn yào yě búgòu yòng, kěshì chángcháng néng xiāomiè fǎndòngpài de dà bùduì. Qǐng nǐ shuōshuōkàn wèishénme?

24. 你说一说，如果我们部队的军事活动和计划常常先给敌人知道了，那是什么原因？

Nǐ shuōyishuō, rúguǒ wǒmen bùduì de jūnshì huódòng hé jìhuà chángcháng xiān gěi dírén zhīdaole, nà shì shénme yuányīn?

25. 听说操练高射炮的士兵需要身体好、动作快，而且着重射击时间的掌握。为什么？

Tīngshuō cāoliàn gāoshèpào de shìbīng xūyào shēntǐ hǎo, dòngzuò kuài, érqiě zhuózhòng shèjǐ shíjiān de zhǎngwò. Wèishénme?

26. 据说现在中国的武装民兵特别着重游击战训练。为什么？

Jùshuō xiànzài Zhōngguó de wǔzhuāng mínbīng tèbié zhuózhòng yóujīzhàn xùnliàn. Wèishénme?

27. 要是在练习立正动作的时候，你觉得累了，干部还没（有）叫你稍息，你可以自动稍息吗？为什么？

Yàoshi zài liànxí lìzhèng dòngzuò de shíhou, nǐ juéde lèile, gānbù hái méi(yǒu) jiào nǐ shāoxī, nǐ kěyǐ zìdòng shāoxī ma? Wèishénme?

28. 如果部队里有间谍替外国侵略者搜集情报并且造谣言，谁应该负责把他找出来？为什么？

Rúguǒ bùduìlǐ yǒu jiàndié tì wàiguó qīnlüèzhě sōují qíngbào bìngqiě zào yáoyán. Shéi yīnggāi fùzé bǎ tā zhǎochūlai? Wèishénme?

29. 受基本训练的时候，有的新兵觉得懂了射击的动作就行了不需要常常操练。你说呢？为什么？

Shòu jīběn xùnliàn de shíhou, yǒude xīnbīng juéde dǒngle shèjǐ de dòngzuò jiù xiǎng bùxūyào chángcháng cāoliàn. Nǐ shuō ne? Wèishénme?

30. 中国的民兵对防御帝国主义的侵略者很重要吗？为什么？

Zhōngguóde mínbīng duì fángyù dìguózhǔyì de qīnlüèzhě hěn zhòngyào ma?
Wèishénme?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. We teach several special techniques at this military school. We not only teach the best method of throwing a hand grenade, but we also teach the skill of killing with the bayonet.

2. Standing at attention is extremely uncomfortable. During drill the best sounding words are "at ease," but sometimes I think that the instructors only know how to say "attention."

3. When undergoing basic training, you must practice the techniques of shooting every day. This is because firing techniques are considered to be the most important military skill.

4. When practicing shooting, you must definitely not waste bullets. If too many bullets are wasted, then emphasizing firing techniques will become too expensive.

5. The hand grenade is sometimes a very effective weapon; it depends on the conditions under which it is used. If the enemy is in a building, corridor, etc., then it is very effective.

6. Last week my friend was killed by enemy fire. He always presumed that it was impossible for him to be killed by the enemy; it was really pitiful.

7. Some (physical) movements are very dangerous. If you are not careful, it is easy to become disabled. If you are disabled, then you cannot complete basic training and you must be deferred or exempted. It's a real waste of time.

8. This newspaper says that the Chinese really can defend the fatherland. This means that both their border defense tactics and coastal defense tactics are very effective, otherwise they wouldn't be able to defend anything.

9. When the enemy airplanes come to bomb us, we must depend on our anti-aircraft guns to defend our city. The fire of our anti-aircraft guns is very effective against airplanes when they are bombing.

10. Studying Chinese includes four special skills. The first skill is reading Chinese characters, the second is writing characters, the third is learning to speak, and the last skill is listening and understanding what Chinese people say.

11. Guerrilla warfare includes many different skills. Not only must you master the skills of firing rifles and machine guns, but you must also master the skills of killing with the bayonet and throwing hand grenades.

12. Our hand grenades and bullets have all been used up. The enemy unit is too large and we can only use our bayonets. I think that our situation is hopeless and we will all be killed.

13. Killing with the bayonet is a very difficult skill to master; you should practice every day. If you do not practice daily, then it will be easy for you to be killed by the enemy.

14. This young lady is my girl friend, which implies that I am her boyfriend. Actually, she just presumes that I am her boyfriend; but of course I like her very much.

15. Only if you have mastered the techniques of patrolling, can you defend the fatherland. These techniques are very difficult to learn, so we must emphasize them more; we will practice them one more hour each day.

16. All of my time studying Chinese has been wasted. Because my achievements have not been up to standard, the Army has assigned me to another unit to drive trucks. I think that the cadres are all reactionaries.

17. It wasn't because I didn't study industriously, it was just that there wasn't enough time, and I was sick quite a few times. It's really a shame that my luck is always so bad.

18. What techniques of fighting a guerrilla war does your training include?
I have heard that they include the tactics of using knives and bayonets to wipe out enemy patrols. Is this true?

19. Naturally, when you throw a hand grenade, you must be very careful. On one hand, you must pay attention to where you throw the hand grenade; and on the other hand, you must pay attention to how far you throw it.

20. It's certainly not the size of the enemy unit that is most important, but it is the weapons and tactics that they use. For example, if they have no pistols, rifles, machine guns, etc., then there is little danger.

21. What we emphasize at this school is guerrilla warfare tactics. This is because when the enemy unit is much larger than ours, we must depend on guerrilla (unit) tactics. If the guerrillas that we train do not master the tactics and techniques of guerrilla warfare, then our small units will have no hope.

22. Yesterday, hundreds of enemy planes came and bombed the city to the north. Thousands of people were killed. Not only were adults and military personnel killed, but many women and children were also killed.

23. The neighborhood committee for defense is going to meet this afternoon at 5:00. They want to discuss the situation of the antiaircraft guns, antitank guns, etc., within the city. This situation implies that the enemy will come soon.

24. All of the rifles and pistols have already been collected from the residents of our village, but by no means are there enough. It is impossible to distribute (issue) a weapon to every militiaman. Our wartime situation is certainly not too good.

25. Only when you hear the sergeant say "at ease" can you smoke, or drink a little water; however, you still can't casually walk around. Whether you agree or not, you still must do whatever he tells you to.

26. When you are dancing, your movements are very important. This is because the person that you are dancing with can see your every movement very clearly. Some people say that dancing is like doing military drills, but I don't agree at all.

27. There is no difference between being killed by (gun) fire and being killed by a hand grenade. To be killed, is to be killed. So the type of weapon that you use to wipe out the enemy is not important, it is only important that you continue to harrass them.

28. During time of war, many people think that only rifles, pistols, hand grenades, etc., are effective. However, the cadre considers the most effective weapon to be the patriotism within the hearts of the masses.

29. Please don't throw these papers out. If you do, then all of my time working here will have been wasted. Those papers include my plans relating to the organization and duties of our militia.

30. The intelligence information that we collected from Comrade Zhang and the intelligence information that we collected from the poor and lower-middle class peasants does not agree, so I don't think that Comrade Zhang is very trustworthy.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Xiǎo Lǐ cānjūn de shíqí, yǒu yíci jūnshì yǎnxí, tāde yìtiáo tuǐ dǎ huàile. Zǔzhǐ ràng tā tuǐwǔ, bìngqiě fā gěi tā yíwàokuài rénmínbì. Tā jiù yòng zhège qián kāile yíge xiǎo fànguǎn wéichí shēnghuó.

2. Shìbīng zhǐyào zhīdao wǔqǐ de gè bùjiàn míngchēng, xìngnéng hé shǐyòng fāngfǎ jiù kéyǐ le. Dānshì bùduì de fùzérén chūle yào dǒng zhèxiē yǐwài, hái yào dǒng zhànshù.

3. Liànxí lìzhèng dòngzuò de shíhou yào xiāng qián kàn, shēntǐ zhānde zhǐ, zhè liǎngge jīběn dòngzuò zuò hǎole yǐhòu, hái yào liànxí zhānde jiǔ. Rúguǒ néng jìxù zhème zhàn shífēn zhōng, jiù suàn hégé le.

4. Xiǎo Wáng cóng bùduì huíjiā xiūxi yíge yuè. Tāde qīnqī dōu lái xiàng tā dǎtīng guānyú bùduìlǐ de shìqíng. Xiǎo Wáng shuō, yǒude shì wǒ kéyǐ gàosu nǐmen, yǒude shì hé jūnshì mǐmǐ yǒu guānxi wǒ jiù bùnéng shuōle.

5. Yìbānde shuō, dǎzhàng de shíhou búyòng cǐdào. Zhǐyǒu dírén xiàng wǒmen chōngfēng, bùqiāng yǐjīng láibùjǐ shèjǐ le, cái shàng cǐdào zhǔnbèi cǐshā dírén.

6. Fùzérén duì cānjiā shídàn shèjǐ de zhànshìmen shuō, "wǒmende guójiā shòudào sīrénbāng de pòhuài yǐhòu, wǔqì hé dānyào de shēngchǎn búgòu wǒmen yòng. Nǐmen yào xiǎoxīn yìdiǎnr shǐyòng bùqiāng, yě bùnéng làngfèi zǐdàn."

7. Zài Zhōngguó, nánrén kéyǐ zuòde gōngzuò nǚrén chàbuduō dōu kéyǐ zuò. Bǐfāngshuō, tāmen kéyǐ dào Jiěfàngjūn qù fú bǐngyì, dào tiěgōngchǎng qù zuògōng, dào nóngcūn qù láodòng shénmede. Tāmende gōngzǐ yě gēn nánrénde yíyàng. Suǒyǐ shuō, Zhōngguó shì yíge nánǚ píngděng de guójiā.

8. Zǎoshang wǒmen pàidào dírén nàbiānr qù sōují qǐngbào de jiàndié, huólai bàogào shuō, nàge zhèndìde díjūn zhǐyǒu shísānge rén, liǎngtǐng jǐqiāng gēn liùzhǐ bùqiāng. Méiyǒu qítāde zhōngwǔqì.

9. Shàng yíci dírénde yóujìduì tōuxí wǒmende zhèndì. Tāmen bǎ shǒuliúdnàn rēngjìn fàntīnglǐ, hái hǎo búshì chífànde shíjiān, méiyǒu shāshāng shénme rén, zhǐ pòhuàile yìxiē zhuōzi, yǐzi hé yībùfen tiānhuābǎn.

10. Xiǎo Jīn cóng Jiěfàngjūn fāngjiā huíjiā, gōngshèlǐ de rén yào tā shuōyīshuō jūnshì xùnlìan de nèiróng, tā jiù biǎoyǎnle jǐge lǐzhèng, shāoxī hé duānqiāng de dòngzuò gěi tāmen kàn. Dàjiā dōu shuō, "zhēn hǎo! Zhēn hǎo!"

11. Yībānláishuō, zǔzhǐ kéyì juédìng nǐ shòuwǎnle xùn yǐhòu dào nǎyige bǐngzhōng qù fú yì. Búguò, yàoshi nǐ yǒu tèbiéde jìnéng, kéyì qǐngqiú zǔzhǐ pài nǐ dào héshìde dìfang qù fú yì.

12. Zhìyuànbǐngzhǐ de hǎochù shì yuànyì dāngbǐng de niánqīngrén kéyì dāngbǐng, búyuànyì dāngbǐng de kéyì qù zuò biéde gōngzuò. Huàichù shì hěnduō jìnéng shuǐpíng gāode rén dōu táobì bǐngyì.

13. Wáng Jīnbiāo shì biéde xùnlìan dānwèi de zhànshì. Tā rēng shǒuliúdàn de jìshù fēicháng hǎo, suóyì jīntiān wǒmen dānwèide gānbù bǎ tā qǐnglái jiāo wǒmen rēng shǒuliúdàn de fāngfǎ.

14. Zài Zhōngguó, mǎnle shíbāsuì de qīngnián bùnéng fú bǐngyì rènwéi shì hěn bùguāngróng de shì. Suóyì hěnduō méiyǒu jiàdào tōngzhǐ de qīngnián chángcháng qǐngqiú zǔzhǐ ràng tāmen fú bǐngyì.

15. Zhōngguó gēn qítāde dīguózhǔyì guójiā bùyíyàng, tā zhǐ zhìzào fāngyù yòngde wǔqī. Zhè yīwèizhe Zhōngguó bǔhuì biàncéng yíge qīnlüè biéren de guójiā.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate" because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 6

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Comrade Lǐ Shì Yíng, a cadre of the Party Committee, is discussing basic training in the Chinese Army with Major Bradford, a new assistant military attache at the U.S. Embassy.

1. B: Tell me, in addition to the standard drills that all armies teach new recruits, what else does the Chinese Army teach in basic training?

L: 我们还教新兵怎么扔手榴弹, 怎么用刺刀刺杀敌人。

Wǒmen hái jiāo xīnbīng zěnmē rēng shǒuliúdàn, zěnmē yòng cìdāo cìshā dírén.

2. B: That's very thorough. How long is your basic training?

L: 基本训练得要三个月。不过, 大多数年轻人在入伍以前已经在公社或是学校学习过“立正”“稍息”等等的基本动作。所以我们就多教他们一些其他的科目。

Jīběn xùnliàn děi yào sāngē yuè. Búguò, dàduōshù niánqīngrén zài rùwǔ yǐqián yǐjīng zài gōngshè huòshì xuéxiào xuéxíguò "lìzhèng" "shāoxī" děngděng de jīběn dòngzuò. Suóyì wǒmen jiù duō jiāo tāmen yìxiē qítāde kēmù.

3. B: So, your young people are ready for military service by the time that they reach the age of induction, right?

L: 是的, 中国青年在没入伍以前就有人人应该当兵保卫祖国的观念。他们认为服兵役是一件光荣的事。

Shìde. Zhōngguó qīngnián zài méi rùwǔ yǐqián jiù yǒu rén rén yīnggāi dāng bīng bǎowèi zǔguó de guānniàn. Tāmen rènwéi fú bīngyì shì yíjiàn guāngróngde shì.

4. B: I suppose that physical drill is included in basic training.

L: 当然, 中国解放军的战士特别注重锻炼身体。那么每一个战士在打仗的时候就都能在任何情况下作战。

Dāngrán, Zhōngguó Jiěfàngjūn de zhànshì tèbié zhùzhòng duànliàn shēntǐ. Nàme měi yíge zhànshì zài dǎzhàng de shíhòu jiù dōu néng zài rènhe qíngkuāngxia zuòzhàn.

5. B: So you probably have many large training bases throughout the country, is that correct?

L: 这反倒不需要。新兵受完了基本训练，如果不是派到船上去服役就是到技术学校去学习。他们服役的单位虽然不同，可是每个月还是有一定的时间来操练，所以不需要特别大的地方。

Zhè fǎndào bùxūyào. Xīnbīng shòuwánle jīběn xùnlìan, rúguǒ búshì pàidào chuánshàng qù fúyì jiùshì dào jìshù xuéxiào qù xuéxí. Tāmen fúyì de dānwèi suīrán bùtóng, kěshì měige yuè háishi yǒu yídingde shíjiān lái cāoliàn, suǒyì bùxūyào tèbié dà de dìfang.

6. B: During basic training, what time do the recruits get up in the morning?

L: 早上六点钟。

Zǎoshang liùdiǎn zhōng.

7. B: What is the first drill that the soldier does each morning?

L: 他们从早上六点十五分到七点，锻炼身体四十五分钟。

Tāmen cóng zǎoshang liùdiǎn shíwǔfēn dào qīdiǎn, duànliàn shēntǐ sìshíwǔfēn zhōng.

8. B: Then what does he do?

L: 接着有十五分钟的时间让他们洗脸、刷牙、整理床什么的。

Jiēzhe yǒu shíwǔfēn zhōng de shíjiān ràng tāmen xǐ liǎn, zhuā yá, zhěnglǐ chuáng shénmede.

9. B: What time is the morning meal?

L: 早饭的时间是七点十五分到八点。

Zǎofàn de shíjiān shì qīdiǎn shíwǔfēn dào bādiǎn.

10. B: Then, I suppose they start training.

L: 你说的对, 从八点到十二点是他们受训的时间。十二点到一点半午饭跟休息。一点半以后一直到五点半是下午训练的时间。

Nǐ shuōde duì, cóng bādiǎn dào shíèrdiǎn shì tāmen shòuxùn de shíjiān. Shíèrdiǎn dào yídiǎnbàn wǔfàn gēn xiūxi. Yídiǎnbàn yǐhòu yìzhí dào wǔdiǎnbàn shì xiàwǔ xùnlìan de shíjiān.

11. B: And then they eat their evening meal?

L: 对了, 他们五点半吃晚饭。晚饭以后到七点有差不多一个钟头的休息时间。七点到八点得上政治学习课。

Duìle, tāmen wǔdiǎnbàn chī wǎnfàn. Wǎnfàn yǐhòu dào qīdiǎn yǒu chàbuduō yíge zhōngtóu de xiūxi shíjiān. Qīdiǎn dào bādiǎn děi shàng zhèngzhì xuéxí kè.

12. B: Is there any time set aside for individual study?

L: 有的。晚上八点到九点可以用来念书或是办一办自己的事情。九点钟关灯。

Yǒude. Wǎnshang bādiǎn dào jiǔdiǎn kěyǐ yònglái niànshū huòshì bànyìbàn zìjǐde shìqing. Jiǔdiǎn zhōng guān dēng.

13. B: Gee, it sounds like they are kept busy all day.

L: 可不是吗! 其实主要的目的就是让战士们一天到晚不停地接受训练。这样他们就没有工夫想别的事情了。

Kěbúshì ma! Qíshí zhǔyàode mùdì jiùshì ràng zhànshìmen yìtiān-dàowǎn bùtíngde jiēshòu xùnlìan. Zhèyàng tāmen jiù méiyǒu gōngfu xiǎng biéde shìqing le.

14. B: How much bayonet drill do they get?

L: 所有的刺杀技术都得学。不过开始的时候, 新兵先从上刺刀开始练习, 一直学到各种刺杀敌人的动作和技术。

Suǒyǒude cìshā jìshù dōu děi xué. Búguò kāishǐ de shíhou, xīnbīng xiān cóng shàng cìdāo kāishǐ liànxí, yìzhí xuédào gèzhǒng cìshā dírén de dòngzuò hé jìshù.

15. B: How about marksmanship?

L: 射击是所有军事训练科目里最主要的一个。我们大部分的时间就是用来训练每一个战士在不浪费子弹的情况下尽可能的多杀死敌人。

Shèjī shì suǒyǒu jūnshì xùnliàn kēmùlǐ zuì zhǔyào de yíge. Wǒmen dàbùfen de shíjiān jiùshì yònglái xùnliàn měi yíge zhànshì zài búlàngfèi zǐdàn de qíngkuàngxià jìnliàngde duō shāshǐ dírén.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Last week the section chief at the Tianjing Ministry of Public Safety was killed by an unknown group of three men while driving to a meeting with an American trade delegation. Comrade Fāng, Division Chief Táng, and Comrade Sòng are discussing this incident and ways to prevent similar cases from happening in the future.

Role 1: Comrade Fāng is the representative of the Tianjing Police. He feels that the group who killed the section chief is probably related to either the Army (bad elements), or to one of the local guerrilla units who have been active lately, as the section chief was killed with a bayonet. Also, as the three men ran away, they shot at, and threw hand grenades at, the police who were trying to catch up with them. Fāng does not have enough policemen to question everyone in the area, so he has asked for outside help.

Role 2: Division Chief Táng is the representative of the Army units assigned to the Tianjing area. Some of the reactionaries in the area have recently formed a guerrilla unit and have been carrying on guerrilla warfare for the past several months. According to intelligence reports, they bought rifles and hand grenades from some of the Russian Embassy personnel, but Táng is certain that they are not involved in the affair, as no one has ever been killed by the guerrilla unit before. Their activities have only included destroying trucks, trains, government property, etc. They have always emphasized that not one of the masses should be injured by their affairs. Táng cannot assign soldiers to help patrol the Tianjing streets as all of his soldiers already have their own duties; however, he does have some people undergoing basic training who could be used for two-three weeks.

Role 3: Comrade Sòng is the local militia representative. As soon as he heard about this affair, he sent notices to all of the Tianjing militiamen asking for intelligence information, but no one knew anything. He cannot understand how the three men were able to run away to begin with, but is willing to organize militia patrols throughout the city to help collect intelligence information. However, he insists that he has the full cooperation of both the police and the Army, and that at least one policeman and one soldier accompany each patrol in order to stress the importance of the affair. He also feels that the police should control all patrols, but they should fully coordinate with him concerning the patrol routes and composition.

Scenario 2

Situation: A training officer, a Regular Army officer, and an "organization" representative have met in Guangxi Province to discuss the training of guerrilla units in the province.

Role 1: Major Qián is the officer responsible for training guerrilla units in Guangxi. Though the "organization" has helped him quite a bit in his duties, he has been unable to get rifles, hand grenades, etc. from the Army units in the area to practice shooting and throwing the grenades. He wants to be able to train the guerrillas as effectively as possible, so he feels that they must use real rifles and real hand grenades. Since the unit has no real weapons, the unit training has been stressing tactics and using apples or oranges for hand grenade-throwing practice. He has not asked for any heavy weapons, as they are useless to a guerrilla unit.

Role 2: Major Zhōu is the representative of the Regular Army in Guangxi. He feels that to give the guerrilla unit real hand grenades and rifles would be a waste of weapons that the Army cannot agree to. Further, he feels that he needs all of his rifles, pistols, hand grenades, etc., for his own units, as everyone knows that they are the backbone of the national defense organization. However, he is willing to give the guerrilla unit one heavy machine gun (as no ammunition is available for it in his unit), one antitank gun, and two tanks (as there is no gasoline in the area).

Role 3: Comrade Zhào is the representative of the "organization." He knows that guerrilla units are useless during peacetime, but feels that, during wartime, they are much more effective than Regular Army units since their duties include, not only harassing the enemy, but collecting intelligence information as well. In the past, these units have proven extremely reliable in collecting information from the poor peasants and in organizing the poor peasants into new guerrilla units. He feels that training guerrilla units is one of the most important obligations of the "organization," as this forms a very important relationship between the military and the masses.

Scenario 3

Situation: Two members of the military organization responsible for the defense of an important Chinese commune have met with a Regular Army officer to discuss the effectiveness of the available weapons in case of enemy invasion.

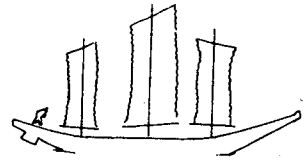
Role 1: Comrade Táng is the representative of the Regular Army who has come to coordinate the defense of the commune. He is concerned that if the enemy is able to bypass (go by) the Regular Army's border defense units, the commune will have no way to defend itself against the invaders. He wants to find out what weapons are available in the commune, as well as the effectiveness of those weapons in roles of antiaircraft defense, antitank defense, and defense against enemy troops. He also feels that militia drills in the commune should be increased.

Role 2: Sergeant Sūn is responsible for the commune's defense against enemy airplanes. The commune has four antiaircraft guns, and six heavy machine guns, but they need at least eight antiaircraft guns to be able to effectively defend against the enemy bombings. He has 12 cadre members who have already been trained in firing antiaircraft guns, and is using them to train other militiamen in how to fire the antiaircraft guns in case some of his men are killed by enemy bombing. There is not enough ammunition for the machine guns, and they are effective against airplanes only if the planes fly very low.

Role 3: Sergeant Zhào is responsible for defense against enemy tanks and soldiers. He has two heavy machine guns and eight light machine guns, as well as 200 rifles and 30 pistols. He considers his ammunition sufficient, but only has 50 bayonets and no antitank guns. He wants 150 more bayonets, and wants to use at least two antiaircraft guns to use as antitank guns. Every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, he conducts training for the commune members, to include rifle/pistol firing techniques, machine gun firing techniques, throwing hand grenades, the use of (killing with the) bayonet, and small unit tactics. However, he does not conduct drills, as he considers it to be useless.

UNIT 7

DIALOGUE



1. A: 你们训练战士用步枪射击以前先教些什么?
B: 先教步枪的构造, 让他们知道部件的名称; 然后教他们射击。
2. A: 你们怎么教射击呢?
B: 战士得学射击的姿势, 怎么瞄准目标, 怎么扣扳机。把这些都掌握了, 才学实弹射击。
3. A: 我想扣扳机不难。但是能把目标打中、打坏、可不容易。
B: 可不是吗! 所以得经常练习、反复练习。那才打得准确。打仗的时候, 就能把敌人打死了。
4. A: 火炮杀伤的敌人比步枪、机枪什么的。你们也训练战士操作火炮吗?
B: 当然训练。他们得学怎么发射无坐力炮, 等等的火炮。还得学怎么装填炮弹。
5. A: 除了这些以外, 还有些什么别的科目。
B: 科目真不少。等我休息一会儿再跟你讲。

1. A: Nǐmen xùnliàn zhànshì yòng
bùqiāng shèjǐ yǐqián xiān
jiāo xiē shénme?
What do you teach first before you
train the servicemen to shoot
with a rifle?
- B: Xiān jiāo bùqiāngde gōuzào,
ràng tāmen zhīdao bùjiàn de
míngchēng; ránhòu jiāo tāmen
shèjǐ.
We first teach them the workings of
a rifle (and) let them know the
nomenclature (of the parts), then
(we) teach them (how) to shoot.
2. A: Nǐmen zěnme jiāo shèjǐ ne?
How do you teach shooting?
- B: Zhànshì děi xué shèjǐde zīshì,
zěnme miáozhǔn mùbiāo, zěnme
kòu bānjǐ. Bǎ zhèixiē dōu
zhǎngwò le, cái xué shídàn
shèjǐ.
The servicemen must learn the posi-
tions of shooting, how to aim
(accurately) at the target, and
how to pull the trigger. They
don't learn live-ammunition shoot-
ing (live fire) until they have
mastered all of these.
3. A: Wǒ xiǎng kòu bānjǐ bùnán.
Dànshì néng bǎ mùbiāo
dǎzhòng, dǎhuài, kě bùróngyi.
I don't think pulling a trigger is
difficult. But, to be able to
score a hit and destroy the tar-
get really isn't easy.
- B: Kě búshi ma! Suóyi děi jǐng-
cháng liànxí, fǎnfù liànxí.
Nà cái dǎde zhǔnquè. Dǎ
zhàng de shíhou, jiù néng
bǎ díren dǎsǐ le.
You can say that again! Therefore,
(they) must practice constantly
and repeatedly. Then, and only
then, can they hit accurately
and kill the enemy in battle.
4. A: Huǒpào shāshāng de díren bǐ
bùqiāng, jíqiāng shénmede duō.
Nǐmen yě xùnliàn zhànshì
cāozuò huǒpào ma?
Artillery pieces, as compared to
rifles, etc., can kill or wound
more of the enemy.
- B: Dāngrán xùnliàn. Tāmen děi
xué zěnme fāshè wúzuòlǐpào,
děngděngde huǒpào. Hái děi
xué zěnme zhuāngtián pàodàn.
We surely do. They must learn how
to fire artillery pieces, such
as recoilless rifles, etc.
(They) must also learn how to
load (them) with shells.
5. A: Chule zhèxiē yǐwài, hái yǒu
xiē shénme biéde kēmù?
(In addition to these,) what other
subjects are there?
- B: Kēmù zhēn bùshǎo. Děng wǒ
xiūxi yìhuǐr zài gēn nǐ
jiǎng.
There are really quite a few
subjects. I'll continue (my
explanations) after my break.

VOCABULARY

扳机	bānjī	trigger
部件	bùjiàn	parts (of a machine, weapon, etc.)
操作	cāozuò	to operate (a machine, weapon, etc.)
打得准(确)	dǎde zhǔn(què)	to hit accurately
打坏	dǎhuài	to destroy (by striking or with weapon)
打死	dǎsǐ	to kill, to be killed
打中	dǎzhòng	to score a hit
反复(的)	fǎnfù(de)	repeatedly
发射	fāshè	to shoot; to fire (a weapon)
构造	gòuzào	structure, construction
火炮	huǒpào	artillery piece (C: mén)
经常(的)	jīngcháng(de)	constantly
科目	kēmù	subjects (in learning or studies) (C: ge)
扣	kòu	to pull (trigger)
瞄准	miáozhǔn	to aim (accurately)
名称	míngchēng	nomenclature, name (of an object or an organization)
目标	mùbiāo	target
炮弹	pàodàn	(artillery) shell (C: fā)
杀伤	shāshāng	to kill/wound
实弹射击	shídàn shèjī	live-ammunition shooting; to shoot with live ammunition (live fire)
死	sǐ	to die
无坐力炮	wúzuòlìpào	recoilless rifle (C: mén)

MST, Unit 7

战士	zhànshì	fighter (mil.); serviceman (mil.)
装填	zhuāngtián	to load with (mil.)
姿势	zīshì	position (in the sense of posture)

STORY COMPREHENSION

四年以前我在中学毕业了，就到北京附近的一个陆军部队去受基本训练。我们学习的科目可不少，包括操练、射击等等。负责训练的干部都有很大的积极性，讲得非常清楚，要我们掌握每一个动作。跟我一起受训的还有三百多个新战士，大家都很用功地学习。我们都知道国家挑选我们来服兵役是因为国家认为我们将来可以担任保卫祖国，防御帝国主义侵略的工作。我们不努力学习就是浪费国家的钱。我们目前建设新中国，很需要钱，谁都不应该浪费。

我刚才说“大家都很用功学习。”这句话有一点儿不对。在那三百多个新战士里头，有一个人不用功、不努力。他姓张，名字叫金标，

Sìnián yǐqián wǒ zài zhōngxué
bìle yè, jiù dào Běijīng fùjīnde yíge
lùjūn bùduì qù shòu jīběn xùnliàn.
Wǒmen xuéxíde kēmù kě bùshǎo, bāokuò
cāoliàn, shèjī dēngděng. Fùzé xùnliàn
de gānbù dōu yǒu hěndàde jījíxìng,
jiǎngde fēicháng qīngchū, yào wǒmen
zhǎngwò měiyíge dòngzuò. Gēn wǒ yìqǐ
shòuxùnde hái yǒu sānbǎiduōge xīn
zhànshì, dàjiā dōu hěn yònggōngde
xuéxí. Wǒmen dōu zhīdao guójiā tiāo-
xuǎn wǒmen lái fú bīngyì shì yīnwei
guójiā rènwéi wǒmen jiānglái kěyǐ
dānrèn bǎowèi zǔguó, fángyù dìguó-
zhǔyì qīnlüè de gōngzuò. Wǒmen
bùnǚlì xuéxí jiù shì làngfèi guójiāde
qián. Wǒmen mùqián jiànshè xīn
Zhōngguó, hěn xūyào qián, shéi dōu
bùyīnggāi làngfèi.

Wǒ gāngcái shuō "Dàjiā dōu hěn
yònggōng xuéxí." Zhèjù huà yǒu
yìdiǎnr búduì. Zài nà sānbǎiduōge
xīn zhànshì lǐtou, yǒu yíge rén
bùyònggōng, bùnlǚlì. Tā xìng Zhāng,

我们叫他小张。小张不是不聪明，就是不愿意用功。比如说，干部给我们讲步枪构造的时候，也把部件的名称告诉我们，要我们写下来，别人都照干部说的话去作，他什么也没写。我问他“你怎么不把部件的名称写下来啊？”他说“没关系，我都记得，不必写下来了。”我想小张这个人可真聪明，以后应该向他学习学习。第二天早上五点半，干部把我们叫在一起，对我们说，“今天我给你们讲了好几个钟头的步枪构造跟部件的名称，现在我要看看你们记得多少。张金标！你把步枪各部件的名称给我讲一讲。”小张站在那儿，一句话也说不出，脸红极了。干部说，“你现在知道你自己不对了吧！今天晚上不许到别的地方去，到我的办公室来，我再给你讲一次。”

míngzi jiào Jīnbīāo, wǒmen jiào tā
Xiǎo Zhāng. Xiǎo Zhāng búshì bùcōng-
míng, jiù shì búyuànyì yònggōng.
Bīrúshuō, gānbù gěi wǒmen jiǎng
bùqiāng gòuzào de shíhou, yě bǎ
bùjiàn de míngchēng gào su wǒmen, yào
wǒmen xiěxiàlai, biérén dōu zhào
gānbù shuōde huà qù zuò, tā shénme
yě méixiě. Wǒ wèn tā "Nǐ zěnme bùbǎ
bùjiàn de míngchēng xiěxiàlai a?"
Tā shuō: "Méiguānxi, wǒ dōu jìde,
búbì xiěxiàlai le." Wǒ xiǎng Xiǎo
Zhāng zhège rén kě zhēn cōngmíng,
yǐhòu yīnggāi xiàng tā xuéxí xuéxí.
Dìertiān zǎoshang wǔdiǎnbàn, gānbù
bǎ wǒmen jiào zài yìqǐ, duì wǒmen
shuō, "Zuótiān wǒ gěi nǐmen jiǎngle
hǎojǐge zhōngtōu de bùqiāng gòuzào
gēn bùjiàn de míngchēng, xiànzài wǒ
yào kànkān nǐmen jìde duōshǎo. Zhāng
Jīnbīāo! Nǐ bǎ bùqiāng gèbùjiàn de
míngchēng gěi wǒ jiǎngyíjiǎng."
Xiǎo Zhāng zhànzai nàr, yíjù huà yě
shuōbùchūlai, liǎn hóngjǐle. Gānbù
shuō: "Nǐ xiànzài zhīdao nǐ zìjǐ
búduìle ba! Jīntiān wǎnshang bùxǔ
dào biéde dìfang qù, dào wǒde

过了一个星期，我们学习实弹射击了。除了小张以外，大家都反复地练习、经常地练习；白天练习，吃了晚饭以后又练习。小张只练习了半个钟头，有工夫的时候坐在地上看杂志。有一天，干部要看看我们打得准确不准确，别人射击得都不错，小张一次也没打中。小张说目标离他太远了，所以打不中。干部说，“其他战士的目标跟你的一样远，怎么别人都打中了呢。你告诉我你是怎么射击的。”小张说：“先扣扳机再马上瞄准目标。”干部说，“我昨天给大家讲的话你一定没听，我敢说你昨天晚上一定也没念书。要不然，怎么你刚才说的话一点儿也不对？后天是星期一，从星期一到星期六，每天早上四点半到我这儿来，我再教你。”过了一个多礼拜以后，小张射击得不错了，目

bàngōngshì lái, wǒ zài gěi nǐ jiǎng yíci."

Guòle yíge xīngqī, wǒmen xuéxí shídàn shèjī le. Chúle Xiǎo Zhāng yǐwài, dàjiā dōu fǎnfùde liànxí, jīngchángde liànxí; báitiān liànxí, chīle wǎnfàn yǐhòu yòu liànxí. Xiǎo Zhāng zhǐ liànxíle bànge zhōngtóu, yǒu gōngfu de shíhou zuòzai dìshàng kàn zázhì. Yǒu yìtiān, gānbù yào kànkān wǒmen dǎde zhǔnquè bùzhǔnquè, biérén shèjīde dōu búcuò, Xiǎo Zhāng yíci yě méi dǎzhòng. Xiǎo Zhāng shuō mùbiāo lí tā tài yuǎnle, suóyì dǎbùzhòng. Gānbù shuō, "Qítā zhànshì de mùbiāo gēn nǐde yíyàng yuǎn, zěnme biérén dōu dǎzhòngle ne. Nǐ gàosu wǒ nǐ shì zěnme shèjī de." Xiǎo Zhāng shuō: "Xiān kòu bānjī zài mǎshàng miáozhǔn mùbiāo." Gānbù shuō, "Wǒ zuótiān gěi dàjiā jiǎngde huà nǐ yídìng méi tīng, wǒ gǎn shuō nǐ zuótiān wǎnshàng yídìng yě méi niàn shū. Yàoburán, zěnme nǐ gāngcái shuōde huà yìdiǎnr yě búduì? Hòutiān shì Xīngqīyī, cóng Xīngqīyī dào Xīngqīliù, měitiān zǎoshàng sìdiǎnbàn

标也打中了很多次，可是他射击的姿势还是不对。

第五个星期我们练习发射各种火炮。那些火炮包括无坐力炮和许多比无坐力炮大的火炮。干部先把我们叫在一起，再分派各人的工作。比方说，这个人负责发射，那个人负责装填。这几个战士操作无坐力炮，那几个战士操作大一点儿的火炮。分派给小张的任务是装填大火炮的炮弹。可是小张并没注意干部说的话，并且也没搞清楚大火炮的炮弹跟无坐力炮的炮弹有什么不一样的地方。到了装填的时候，小张随便拿起来一发无坐力炮的炮弹就要装填。这个时候，有一个干部走过来看见小张这么做，就非常生气，叫他马上离开练习操作火炮的那个地方。

dào wǒ zhèng lái, wǒ zài jiāo nǐ."
Guòle yígeduō lǐbài yǐhòu, Xiǎo
Zhāng shèjǐde búcuòle, mùbiāo yě
dǎzhòngle hěnduōcì, kěshi tā shèjǐde
zīshì hái shì búduì.

Dìwūge xīngqī wǒmen liànxí
fāshè gèzhǒng huǒpào. Nàxiē huǒpào
bāokuò wúzuòlìpào hé xǔduō bǐ
wúzuòlìpào dàde huǒpào. Gānbù xiān
bǎ wǒmen jiào zài yìqǐ, zài fēnpài
gèrénde gōngzuò. Bǐfāngshuō, zhège
rén fùzé fāshè, nàge rén fùzé zhuāng-
tián. Zhèjǐge zhànshì cāozuò wúzuò-
lìpào, nàjǐge zhànshì cāozuò dàyidiǎnr
de huǒpào. Fēnpài gěi Xiǎo Zhāng de
rènwù shì zhuāngtián dàhuǒpào de
pàodàn. Kěshi Xiǎo Zhāng bìng méi
zhùyì gānbù shuōde huà, bìngqiě yě
méi gǎo qīngchū dàhuǒpào de pàodàn
gēn wúzuòlìpào de pàodàn yǒu shénme
bùyíyàng de dìfang. Dào le zhuāngtián
de shíhou, Xiǎo Zhāng suíbian náqǐ lai
yí fā wúzuòlìpào de pàodàn jiù yào
zhuāngtián. Zhège shíhou, yǒu yíge
gānbù zǒuguò lai kànjian Xiǎo Zhāng
zhème zuò, jiù fēicháng shēngqì, jiào
ta mǎshàng líkāi liànxí cāozuò huǒpào

三个月以后，我们都受完了基本训练，分派到别的部队去服兵役。只有小张还得留下来再受三个月的基本训练。组织把我分派到这个部队来已经三年多了。有一天，从前跟我一起受训的老王来看我，我问他知道不知道小张怎么样了。老王说，小张受完了基本训练以后，到山东省去服兵役，工作很努力、很有干劲儿。经常跟干部说，他多用了三个月受基本训练，浪费了国家的钱，他觉得很不舒服。现在他有机会服兵役、保卫祖国，世界上没有比这个更光荣的事了。如果有一天打起仗来，他愿意为国家死。去年，山东省的反动派跟坏分子组织了一个游击队。解放军派小张服兵役的那个部队去消灭他们。那个部队杀伤了许多敌人，可是小张自己也打死了。干部在他的东西里头找着了两封信，一封是写给他

de nàge dìfang.

Sānge yuè yǐhòu, wǒmen dōu shòuwánle jīběn xùnliàn, fēnpài dào biéde bùduì qù fú bīngyì. Zhǐyǒu Xiǎo Zhāng hái děi liúxiàlai zài shòu sānge yuè de jīběn xùnliàn. Zǔzhī bǎ wǒ fēnpài dào zhège bùduì lái yǐjīng sānniánduō le. Yǒu yìtiān, cóngqián gēn wǒ yìqǐ shòuxùn de Lǎo Wáng lái kàn wǒ, wǒ wèn tā zhīdao Xiǎo Zhāng zěnmeyàng le. Lǎo Wáng shuō, Xiǎo Zhāng shòuwánle jīběn xùnliàn yǐhòu, dào Shāndōngshěng qù fú bīngyì, gōngzuò hěn nǔlì, hěn yǒu gànjinr. Jīngcháng gēn gānbù shuō, tā duōyòngle sānge yuè shòu jīběn xùnliàn, làngfèile guójiāde qián, tā juéde hěn bùshūfu. Xiànzài tā yǒu jīhuì fú bīngyì, bǎowèi zǔguó, shìjièshang méiyǒu bǐ zhège gèng guāngróngde shì le. Rúguǒ yǒu yìtiān dǎqǐzhànglai, tā yuànyì wèi guójiā sǐ. Qùnián, Shāndōngshěng de fǎndòngpài gēn huàifènzi zǔzhīle yíge yóujiānduì. Jiěfàngjūn pài Xiǎo Zhāng fú bīngyì de nàge bùduì qù xiāomiè tāmen. Nàge bùduì shāshāngle xǔduō

父母的。信上说，他快要去打仗了。如果他打死了，他父母应该很高兴，别哭，因为他是为国家死的。另外一封是写给他弟弟的，信上说，如果他打死了，他弟弟应该马上志愿参军，那么张家就还有人继续小张保卫祖国的工作。

dírén, kěshi Xiǎo Zhāng zìjǐ yě
dāsǐle. Gàn bù zài tāde dōngxi lǐtōu
zhǎozháole liǎngfēng xìn, yīfēng shì
xiě gěi tā fùmǔ de. Xìnshàng shuō,
tā kuàiyào qù dǎzhàngle. Rúguǒ tā
dāsǐle, tā fùmǔ yīnggāi hěn gāoxìng,
bié kū, yīnwei tā shì wèi guójiā sǐde.
Lìngwài yīfēng shì xiě gěi tā dìdì de,
xìnshàng shuō, rúguǒ tā dāsǐle, tā
dìdì yīnggāi mǎshàng zhìyuàn cānjūn,
nàme Zhāngjia jiù hái yǒu rén jìxù
Xiǎo Zhāng bǎowèi zǔguó de gōngzuò.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS
for
STORY COMPREHENSION

1. When did the speaker go for his basic training?
2. Where (unit and location) did he go for basic training (2 items)?
3. According to the speaker, what was the attitude of the training cadre?
4. How many people were trained together with the speaker?
5. According to the speaker, what was the trouble with Xiao Zhang?
6. What did the cadre want the trainees to write down?
7. What reason did Xiao Zhang give as to why he need not write anything down?

MST, Unit 7

8. What did the cadre want Xiao Zhang to do after assembling the trainees the next morning?
9. What was Xiao Zhang's reaction to the cadre's request?
10. On what activity did Xiao Zhang spend only half an hour?
11. What did Xiao Zhang do (during his free time) while everyone else was practicing?
12. What was Xiao Zhang's alibi when he could not score even one hit?
13. What was Xiao Zhang's response when the cadre asked him how he fired the weapon (be specific)?
14. After more than a week, Xiao Zhang had improved his marksmanship, but what deficiency still remained?
15. What did the trainees do in their fifth week of training?
16. What was the purpose of the cadre calling the trainees together?
17. What did they tell Xiao Zhang to do?

MST, Unit 7

18. What happened to Xiao Zhang when everyone else had completed basic training and gone their separate ways (be specific)?
19. What did the speaker have in common with Lao Wang who came to visit him?
20. According to Lao Wang, how was Xiao Zhang's performance in Shandong Province?
21. What did Xiao Zhang constantly tell the cadre the result of his additional training was?
22. (1) What unit was Xiao Zhang's unit supposed to wipe out, and (2) by what two (2) elements had this unit been organized?
23. What did Xiao Zhang's unit accomplish?
24. What did the cadre find among Xiao Zhang's personal effects/personal things following his death?
25. What did Xiao Zhang ask his brother to do?

STORY COMPREHENSION

Answers to Questions

1. When did the speaker go for his basic training?
(four years ago AND/OR after graduation from middle school)
2. Where (unit and location) did he go for basic training (2 items)?
(1. to an Army unit, and 2. in the vicinity of/near Beijing)
3. According to the speaker, what was the attitude of the training cadre?
([they were] very enthusiastic)
4. How many people were trained together with the speaker?
(more than 300)
5. According to the speaker, what was the trouble with Xiao Zhang?
([he] was not hardworking/studious)
6. What did the cadre want the trainees to write down?
(nomenclature of [rifle] parts)
7. What reason did Xiao Zhang give as to why he need not write anything down?
([he] could remember it all)
8. What did the cadre want Xiao Zhang to do after assembling the trainees the next morning?
([recite/talk about/] tell them the nomenclature for the [rifle] parts [studied the day before])

MST, Unit 7

9. What was Xiao Zhang's reaction to the cadre's request?
([he] didn't say anything AND/OR his face turned red)
10. On what activity did Xiao Zhang spend only half an hour?
(practicing [live] firing)
11. What did Xiao Zhang do (during his free time) while everyone else was practicing ?
([sat on the ground and] read magazines)
12. What was Xiao Zhang's alibi when he could not score even one hit?
(the target was too far away)
13. What was Xiao Zhang's response when the cadre asked him how he fired the weapon (be specific)?
([he] pulled the trigger, then aimed at the target)
14. After more than a week, Xiao Zhang had improved his marksmanship, but what deficiency still remained?
(his firing position [posture])
15. What did the trainees do in their fifth week of training?
(learned to fire [various types of] artillery pieces)
16. What was the purpose of the cadre calling the trainees together?
(to assign everyone a [work] task)
17. What did they tell Xiao Zhang to do?
(load [shells for] the large artillery pieces)
18. What happened to Xiao Zhang when everyone else had completed basic training and gone their separate ways (be specific)?
([he was] held over for three more months [of basic training])

MST, Unit 7

19. What did the speaker have in common with Lao Wang who came to visit him?
([they had] gone through training together)
20. According to Lao Wang, how was Xiao Zhang's performance in Shandong Province?
(very industrious/enthusiastic)
21. What did Xiao Zhang constantly tell the cadre the result of his additional training was?
([he had] wasted a lot of [the nations's] money)
22. (1) What unit was Xiao Zhang's unit supposed to wipe out, and
(2) by what two (2) elements had this unit been organized?
(1) ([a] guerrilla [unit])
(2) (a) (reactionaries) (b) (bad elements)
23. What did Xiao Zhang's unit accomplish?
(wounded AND/OR killed many of the enemy [troops])
24. What did the cadre find among Xiao Zhang's personal effects/personal things following his death?
(two letters)
25. What did Xiao Zhang ask his brother to do?
([voluntarily] join the Army)

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 如果有人说，“立正，稍息”的训练一点儿用也没有，你同意吗？为什么？
Rúguǒ yǒu rén shuō, "lìzhèng, shāoxī" de xùnliàn yīdiǎnr yòng yě méiyǒu, nǐ tóngyì ma? Wèishénme?
2. 上刺刀，用刺刀刺杀敌人跟扔手榴弹都包括在游击战训练的项目里吗？为什么？
Shàng cìdāo, yòng cìdāo cìshā dírén gēn rēng shǒuliúdàn dōu bāokuò zài yóujīzhàn xùnliàn de xiàngmùlǐ ma? Wèishénme?
3. 听说中国挑选间谍的条件都是贫下中农。为什么？
Tīngshuō Zhōngguó tiāoxuǎn jiàndié de tiáojiàn dōu shì pínxiàzhōngnóng. Wèishénme?
4. 一般地说无坐力炮能打坏多少米以内的军事目标？每分钟可以发射几发炮弹？
Yìbānde shuō wúzuòlìpào néng dǎhuài duōshǎomǐ yǐnèi de jūnshì mùbiāo? Měifēnzhōng kěyǐ fāshè jǐfā pàodàn?
5. 中国的干部说，士兵在平时练习的时候不可以浪费子弹。是不是怕在战时不够用？请讲一讲。
Zhōngguóde gàn bù shuō, shìbīng zài píngshí liànxí de shíhou bù kěyǐ làngfèi zǐdàn. Shì bushì pà zài zhànshí búgòu yòng? Qǐng jiǎngyìjiǎng.
6. 你受步枪实弹射击训练的时候，射击十次应该打中目标几次才合格？为什么？
Nǐ shòu bùqiāng shídàn shèjǐ xùnliàn de shíhou, shèjǐ shí cì yīnggāi dǎzhòng mùbiāo jǐ cì cái hégé? Wèishénme?
7. 士兵在实弹射击高射炮以前应该反复练习操作的技术吗？为什么？
Shìbīng zài shídàn shèjǐ gāoshèpào yǐqián yīnggāi fǎnfù liànxí cāozuò de jìshù ma? Wèishénme?

8. 听说中国的正规军也常常练习打游击战。为什么？
Tīngshuō Zhōngguóde zhèngguījūn yě chángcháng liànxí dǎ yóujīzhàn.
Wèishénme?
9. 在中国，被敌人打坏了的反坦克炮、高射炮等等武器，他们还送回修理厂去修理吗？为什么？
Zài Zhōngguó, bèi dírén dǎhuàile de fǎntǎnkèpào, gāoshèpào dēngdēng wǔqì, tāmen hái sònghuí xiūlǐchǎng qù xiūlǐ ma? Wèishénme?
10. 一般地说，机枪的子弹发射的很快，所以射击的时候不需要瞄准目标，对不对？为什么？
Yībānde shuō, jīqiāng de zǐdàn fāshè de hěn kuài, suǒyǐ shèjī de shíhou bùxūyào miáozhǔn bùbiāo, duì buduì? Wèishénme?
11. 你受基本训练的时候喜欢不喜欢实弹射击？为什么？
Nǐ shòu jīběn xùnlìan de shíhou xǐhuan bùxǐhuan shídàn shèjī? Wèishénme?
12. 请说一说，在使用武器以前，为什么战士应该学习部件的名称？
Qǐng shuōyishuō, zài shǐyòng wǔqì yǐqián, wèishénme zhànshì yīnggāi xuéxí bùjiàn de míngchēng?
13. 扣扳机的动作很简单，为什么干部要战士反复地练习？
Kòu bānjī de dòngzuò hěn jiǎndān, wèishénme gānbù yào zhànshì fǎnfùde liànxí?
14. 打仗的时候，被敌人机枪打死的同志我们管不管？为什么？
Dǎzhàng de shíhou, bèi dírén jīqiāng dǎsǐ de tóngzhì wǒmen guǎn buguǎn? Wèishénme?

15. 实弹射击的时候，只要把目标瞄准好就一定会打中吗？为什么？

Shídàn shèjī de shíhou, zhǐyào bǎ mùbiāo miáozhǔn hǎo jiù yíding huì dǎzhòng ma? Wèishénme?

16. 一般地说，步枪可以打中多少米以内的目标？手枪呢？

Yìbānde shuō, bùqiāng kéyǐ dǎzhòng duōshǎomǐ yǐnèi de mùbiāo? Shǒuqiāng ne?

17. 敌人飞机来轰炸，我们应该使用什么武器来射击？有的时候也可以用步枪射击吗？为什么？

Dírén fēijī lái hōngzhà, wǒmen yīnggāi shǐyòng shénme wǔqì lái shèjī? Yǒude shíhou yě kéyǐ yòng bùqiāng shèjī ma? Wèishénme?

18. 打仗的目的就是要尽量地杀伤敌人，对不对？为什么？

Dǎzhàng de mùdì jiùshì yào jǐngliàngde shāshāng dírén, duì buduì? Wèishénme?

19. 请说一说你在受训的时候，最喜欢跟最不喜欢的科目。为什么？

Qǐng shuōyishuō nǐ zài shòuxùn de shíhou, zuì xǐhuan gēn zuì bùxǐhuan de kē mù. Wèishénme?

20. 你对哪一种武器的构造最清楚？为什么？

Nǐ duì nǎyīzhǒng wǔqì de gòuzào zuì qīngchū? Wèishénme?

21. 打仗的时候，什么时候应该扔手榴弹，什么时候应该用刺刀刺杀敌人？为什么？

Dǎzhàng de shíhou, shénme shíhou yīnggāi rēng shǒuliúdàn, shénme shíhou yīnggāi yòng cìdāo cìshā dírén? Wèishénme?

22. 教民兵射击技术的干部应该懂一点儿气象吗？为什么？

Jiāo mǐnbīng shèjī jìshù de gānbù yīnggāi dǒng yīdiǎnr qìxiàng ma?
Wèishénme?

23. 听说美国的士兵打仗的时候很怕死。这是不是谣言？为什么？

Tīngshuō Měiguóde shìbīng dǎzhàng de shíhou hěn pà sǐ. Zhè shì bushi yáoyán? Wèishénme?

24. 为什么在射击的时候，瞄准目标跟扣扳机的动作应该配合才行？

Wèishénme zài shèjī de shíhou, miáozhǔn mùbiāo gēn kòu bānjī de dòngzuò yīnggāi pèihé cái xíng?

25. 应该挑选身体高大的战士操作反坦克炮吗？为什么？

Yīnggāi tiāoxuǎn shēntǐ gāodàde zhànshì cāozuò fǎntǎnkèpào ma?
Wèishénme?

26. 一般地说，中国的武装民兵都使用些什么轻武器跟重武器？

Yībānde shuō, Zhōngguóde wǔzhuāng mǐnbīng dōu shǐyòng xiē shénme qīng wǔqì gēn zhòng wǔqì?

27. 射击的时候，目标已经瞄准了，要是扣扳机的动作错了，常常打不中，那是什么原因？

Shèjī de shíhou, mùbiāo yǐjīng miáozhǔnle, yàoshi kòu bānjī de dòngzuò cuòle, chángcháng dǎ búzhòng, nà shì shénme yuányīn?

28. 听说中国的游击队武器少，弹药也不够用，可是战士都不怕死，所以常常能消灭反动派的军队。你认为对不对？为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguóde yóujīduì wǔqì shǎo, dànào yě búgòu yòng, kěshi zhànshì dōu búpà sǐ, suǒyǐ chángcháng néng xiāomiè fǎndòngpài de jūnduì. Nǐ rènwei duì búduì? Wèishénme?

29. 请你说一说反坦克炮得有几个战士配合才能操作？
每个人的任务是什么？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō fǎntǎnkèpào děi yǒu jǐge zhànshì pèihé cái néng
cāozuò? Měigerén de rènwù shì shénme?

30. 作战演习的时候，有的战士也会不小心被打死吗？
为什么？

Zuòzhàn yǎnxí de shíhòu, yǒude zhànshì yě huì bùxiǎoxīn bèi dǎsǐ ma?
Wèishénme?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. When fighting a war, there are always many people who die. Not only are many servicemen wounded or killed, but also many women and children.

2. Many servicemen think that it is their duty to die for their country. Actually, their only duty is to kill the enemy.

3. Our unit only has three artillery pieces. One is an antitank gun, and the other two are antiaircraft guns. We also have eight recoilless rifles, but they are not artillery pieces.

4. When the Russian units obtained our recoilless rifle shells, they discovered that the shells we use are suitable for the recoilless rifles that they use. But we cannot use their shells.

5. If you do not aim accurately, how can you destroy the target? You really must practice more, otherwise you will never be able to hit the target accurately.

6. This recoilless rifle really is good looking, but I know nothing about its construction. I really don't know the nomenclature of any of the parts. I don't even recognize which part is the trigger.

7. This shell is really too heavy. When you load it, I think that if your position (posture) is wrong, it would be very easy to be injured. You really must load the shells carefully.

8. When firing the recoilless rifle, you must slowly pull the trigger. If you pull the trigger too quickly, then there is no way to hit accurately.

9. The first time we shot with live ammunition, three servicemen were killed. Our cadre is constantly saying: "Pay attention to safety! Pay attention to safety!", but no one ever listens.

10. The structure (workings) of this machine gun is really too complex; there are too many parts. I think I could practice for three months and still not know how to operate this kind of weapon.

11. Before firing with live ammunition, the cadre always stresses safety. They are constantly telling us, "First look around, then think, then fire." Ten minutes have already passed, and people are still looking and thinking.

12. When fighting a battle, there are many different kinds of targets. Most of the time, there is no spare time to see what is a target and what is not a target. I think you'd better consider everything you see to be a target.

13. If it is not loaded, then that recoilless rifle is useless. Loading the shells is your duty, and the faster you load the shells, the better.

14. Artillery shells and good-tasting wine are the same; the older they become, the more dangerous they are.

15. He fired only once, and the target was completely destroyed. We only have one target here, so the remaining shells are all wasted.

16. They will not allow us to fire with live ammunition. They say that regardless of whether the target is large or small, near or far, none of us could score a hit. They say that the effectiveness of our firing is the equivalent of throwing oranges at (toward) the targets.

17. When I had finished repairing my automobile, there were still quite a few parts left over. I don't know the nomenclature of these parts, nor do I know of what use they are. I just know that my car still won't start.

18. We study many various subjects here. First, we servicemen study the nomenclature of various parts of an artillery piece, then we learn the various firing positions. Finally, we learn the effectiveness of various types of artillery shells.

19. The structure of this television is very interesting. It has no moving parts at all. This type of television is very expensive, but this type of construction is the best; it implies that the television will be very easy to repair if it breaks.

20. You are constantly saying that this artillery piece is not effective. On the contrary, it is your aiming that is not effective. There is nothing wrong with the construction of the artillery piece.

21. I don't understand why we must learn the names of the various artillery pieces. The nomenclature has no relationship to the effectiveness of the weapons. Whether you know the nomenclature or not, you can still hit the target accurately.

22. Yesterday morning, when the enemy bombers came, my friends were all killed. I think that continuing to stay here is not too intelligent; this place is just too dangerous. If I continue living here, I'll probably be killed too.

23. The target of our bombing is this small farming village. They have no servicemen there, but that implies that this farming village also has no antiaircraft guns. They only have a factory-run kindergarten and a hospital.

24. There are too many anti-aircraft guns in that city, so their firepower is very strong. When we went to bomb them, many of our aircraft were damaged. Moreover, more than 300 of our Air Force servicemen were killed or wounded.

25. Using anti-aircraft gun shells to load a recoilless rifle is not too smart, but you can load the shells used by anti-tank guns. This is because the recoilless rifle is one kind/type of anti-tank gun.

26. Operating an anti-tank gun and operating an anti-aircraft gun is the same; there is no difference in the aiming techniques. The only difference is the nomenclature and the target. During World War II (the second time the world fought a war), the German Army often used anti-aircraft guns to serve as anti-tank guns.

27. The cadre here has repeatedly stressed mastering the technique of throwing hand grenades. They say that hand grenades are too expensive, and we have only three here. Therefore, when we practice throwing grenades, we actually throw oranges at the targets.

28. When making war, the living conditions of the poor and lower-middle class peasants is really pitiful. They often have no food to eat or water to drink. Moreover, no one has the mission of helping them.

29. I think that this is just a misunderstanding. Our officer says that we should learn to operate antitank guns, but the cadre says that we should learn to operate anti-aircraft guns. I think that there was no coordination between these two elements.

30. The premier of that nation repeatedly says that he is only thinking of border defense, but I know that he believes in imperialism. I think that what he says is not the same as what he thinks. He doesn't think about the border defense of his own country, but the border defense of other nations.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Bùduì zài gēn dírén dǎzhàng yǐqián, fùzérén yǐngāi xiān bǎ dírén de jūnshì qíngbào sōují hǎo.
2. Yìbānde shuō, jūnshì gōngyè píngshí yǐngāi zhuózhòng wǔqì hé dānyào de shēngchǎn, nàme dào le zhànshí cái gōuyòng.
3. Lìzhèng gēn shāoxī zhè liǎngge xùnlìan kēmù kànqilai bùrán, dànshì shíjìshang cāoliàn de shíhou bìng bùróngyì.
4. Zhōngguó háishi yíge bǐjiào qióngde guójiā, suóyì zài shídàn shèjì de shíhou, gānbù zǒngshì jiào shìbīng búyào làngfèi zìdàn.
5. Tīngshuō xiànzài Zhōngguó gè jūnzhǒng hé bùduì de língdǎorén guòqù dōu dǎguo yóujìzhàn, tāmen dōu zhīdao zěnmeyàng nénggòu yòu shèngqián yòu bǎ zhànshì xùnlìan hǎo.
6. Zhōngguó yóujìduì dǎ yóujìzhàn de shíhou hěn zhuózhòng tōuxíde zhànshù, tāmen guòqù gēn fǎndòngpài de zhèngguījūn dǎzhàng, búdàn búhuì bèi xiāomiè, fǎndào yòushíhou bǎ zhèngguījūn xiāomièle.
7. Zài bùduìlǐ, zhǐhuìyuán shuōhuà de shíhou méiyòu jiào nǐ shāoxī, nǐ jiù bùkěyì shāoxī, yǐngāi lìzhèng, zhānzai nàr.

8. Tīngshuō mùqián Zhōngguóde wǔzhuāng mínbīng měi yíge zhànshì dōu kényī fēnpèidào yìzhǐ bùqiāng, shíkē shǒuliúdàn gēn yībǎifā zīdàn.
9. Gēn dírén zài jīn jùlǐ zuòzhàn de shíhou yīnggāi xiān shàng cìdào zhǔnbèi, jīhuì láiile jiù kényī cìshā dírén.
10. Zài Zhōngguó, jùshuō mei yíge shòuxùn de shìbing zài shǒuliúdàn tóudàn liànxi de shíhou zuìshǎo yào rēng sānshímǐ yuǎn cái suàn hégé.
11. Shǐyòng bùqiāng shèjǐ de shíhou yǒu hǎojǐge jīběn dòngzuò. Xiàng duānqiāng, miáozhǔn, kǒu bānjǐ shénmede, dànshi zuì yàoǐnde dòngzuò shì kǒu bānjǐ.
12. Dìguózhǔyì hé fǎndòngpài yòng hěnduō fāngfǎ lái pòhuài Zhōngguó. Bǐfāngshuō, tāmen pài jiāndié zài jūnduìlǐ zào yáoyán, zhìzào shìbing hé gǎnbù zhōngjiān de wùhuì, jiùshì yìzhǒng pòhuài de fāngfǎ.
13. Zhōngguó yóujīduì gēn fǎndòngpài de zhèngguǐjūn dǎzhàng yìqián zǒngshì xiān sōují qǐngbào, dēngdao zhāngwòle dírénde xíngdòng yǐhòu, cái kāishǐ tōuxí.
14. Tīngshuō Zhōngguó zài Yìjiǔqīlíngnián yǐhòu, wèile fángyù běifāng de dìguózhǔyì qīnlüèzhě, tèbié zhuózhòng zhìzào fǎntǎnkè wǔqì jiāogēi běifāngde biānfāng bùduì shǐyòng.
15. Rúguǒ nǐ dào dírénde zhèndì qù tōuxí, kànjian dírén zhèngzai yìqǐ chí fǎn, zhège shíhou rēng shǒuliúdàn shāshāng tāmen bǐ yòng bùqiāng yǒuxiào.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate" because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 7

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Comrade Li Shi Ying and Major Bradford continue their conversation from the previous unit.

1. B: How long does the marksmanship phase of basic training last?

L: 差不多需要两个星期的时间。

Chàbùduō xūyào liǎngge xīngqī de shíjiān.

2. B: What do they learn first?

L: 他们先学习步枪各种部件的名称。

Tāmen xiān xuéxí bùqiāng gèzhǒng bùjiàn de míngchēng.

3. B: What else do they learn the first week?

L: 接着他们开始学习用不同的姿势，在不同的地方瞄准，并且练习装填子弹、扣扳机等等射击动作。其他跟射击有关系的科目也得学习。

Jiēzhe tāmen kāishǐ xuéxí yòng bùtóngde zīshì, zài bùtóngde dìfang miáozhǔn, bìngqiě liànxí zhuāngtián zǐdàn, kòu bān jī děngděng shèjī dòngzuò. Qítā gēn shèjī yǒuguānxì de kēmù yě děi xuéxí.

4. B: Do they learn to shoot with live ammunition?

L: 那当然了，不过第一个星期没有实弹射击，因为新兵得先熟悉使用步枪的基本方法，然后才可以射击目标。一般来说，第二个星期他们可以开始实弹射击了。

Nà dāngrán le, búguò dìyīge xīngqī méiyǒu shídàn shèjī, yīnwèi xīnbīng děi xiān shúxī shǐyòng bùqiāng de jīběn fāngfǎ, ránhòu cái kéyǐ shèjī mùbiāo. Yībānláishuō, dìèrge xīngqī tāmen kéyǐ kāishǐ shídàn shèjī le.

5. B: Is the trainee able to hit the target accurately after his marksmanship instruction?

L: 实弹射击训练一两天以后，他们差不多都能打中目标。我认为到了作战的时候，他们能够用学来的技术打死敌人。

Shídàn shèjǐ xùnliàn yīliǎngtiān yǐhòu, tāmen chàbùduō dōu néng dǎzhòng mùbiāo. Wǒ rènwéi dào le zuòzhàn de shíhou, tāmen nénggou yòng xuélaide jìshù dǎsǐ dírén.

6. B: Well, that is the serviceman's main mission. Do they learn to shoot any other weapons?

L: 除了步枪以外, 他们也学习装填炮弹、发射无坐力炮跟其他的火炮。

Chúle bùqiāng yīwèi, tāmen yě xuéxí zhuāngtián pàodàn, fāshè wúzuòlìpào gēn qítāde huǒpào.

7. B: The recoilless rifle is a useful weapon. We use it a lot in the U.S. Army.

L: 一点儿也不错, 无坐力炮比别的火炮轻很多, 火力又强, 打敌人的坦克特别有效, 我最喜欢这种武器。

Yīdiǎnr yě búcuò, wúzuòlìpào bǐ biéde huǒpào qīng hěnduō, huǒlì yòu qiáng, dǎ dírén de tǎnkē tèbié yǒuxiào, wǒ zuì xǐhuan zhèzhǒng wǔqì.

8. B: What is that structure over there?

L: 哦! 那是为了火炮射击训练的时候当目标用的。

Ò, nà shì wèile huǒpào shèjǐ xùnliàn de shíhou dāng mùbiāo yòngde.

9. B: When will these recruits fire artillery pieces again?

L: 啊, 大概是明天。你为什么问这个?

A, dàgài shì míngtiān. Nǐ wèishénme wèn zhège?

10. B: I would really like to watch them. I have never seen your artillery before.

L: 欢迎你来参观他们的火炮射击训练。其实, 要是你有兴趣, 你还可以自己试一试发射呢。

Huānyíng nǐ lái cānguān tāmen de huǒpào shèjǐ xùnliàn. Qíshí, yàoshi nǐ yǒu xìngqù, nǐ hái kěyǐ zìjǐ shìyìshì fāshè ne?

11. B: I'd like that. Thank you.

L: 别客气。

Bié kèqì.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Two representatives of the PRC Regular Army are meeting with the representative of a weapons manufacturing factory to discuss the quality and quantity of weapons being produced. One of the PLA officers represents artillery units, while the other is an infantry officer.

Role 1: Comrade Zhang is the representative of the "Huanghe" weapons factories. The peacetime factory production (monthly) is 300 rifles with bayonets, 30 machine guns, and nine artillery pieces. The factory can only manufacture antitank and antiaircraft guns, as they don't have the necessary parts to manufacture other (types) of artillery pieces. During wartime, they could manufacture only half as many weapons, as half of the laborers are militiamen, and would probably join the Regular Army in defending the fatherland. The problem of not enough workers could be solved by using women and children as laborers, but that would require special training (for them) of two to three weeks.

Role 2: Major Wang is the military officer concerned with the manufacture of artillery pieces by the factory. "Organization" requirements for the next month are two antiaircraft guns, four antitank guns, and three recoilless rifles. The recoilless rifles must be manufactured at this plant for political reasons. If necessary, the parts may be manufactured by nearby factories, and then the final production will take place at the "Huanghe" factory; or personnel may be assigned from other factories to instruct the "Huanghe" workers in recoilless rifle production techniques.

Role 3: Major Xu is the small arms procurement officer. He has been notified by the "organization" to tell the factory representative that the structure of their rifles is too complex; the servicemen must constantly train on loading and firing, and too much training time is being wasted. Also, for targets beyond 400 meters, the "Huanghe" rifles are useless. Not only can none of the soldiers undergoing training score a hit with them when firing with live ammo, none of the cadre can either. So the Army wants a rifle of simpler construction, as that would make the rifle more dependable under combat situations and easier to aim. They also want the factory to manufacture 10% more bayonets.

Scenario 2

Situation: The "organization" has assigned an officer from Beijing to visit Unit #346 to evaluate the effectiveness and requirements of the unit for combat.

Role 1: Comrade Zhao is the inspecting officer from Beijing. He has been instructed to discuss such information as the numbers and types of artillery pieces currently assigned to the unit, as well as their effectiveness against targets at various ranges and any additional needs for extra artillery pieces.

Role 2: Major Wang is the officer responsible for live firing practice at Unit #346. He has been asked to answer any questions concerning accuracy of fire, rate of fire, etc., of the artillery pieces assigned to Unit #346. He has the following information available:

WEAPON: Recoilless Rifles			ACCURACY:		
Type:	Crew:	Rate/Fire	100 meters	250 meters	500 meters
75-mm	1-load 1-aim & fire	6 rnds/min	90%	75%	40%
82-mm	1-load 1-aim & fire	5 rnds/min	95%	80%	70%
WEAPON: Antitank guns					
85-mm	1-load 1-aim 1-fire	10 rnds/min	95%	85%	80%
57-mm	1-load 1-aim & fire	7 rnds/min	95%	80%	65%

Role 3: Major Zhao is the commander of Unit #346. He feels that the unit is presently prepared to carry out its military duties in time of war. The unit currently has six 75-mm recoilless rifles, three 82-mm recoilless rifles, sixteen 57-mm antitank guns, and four 85-mm antitank guns. The unit is currently training 30 servicemen per month in loading/firing techniques, but only 10% are allowed to fire with live ammunition, as there is not enough to allow everyone to fire. Therefore, more ammunition to be used for live-fire training is badly needed by the unit. The gunners especially like the recoilless rifles because of their light weight and simple construction, though their accuracy is not especially good.

Scenario 3

Situation: An officer has been sent to evaluate the effectiveness of the training of two of the local militia units. Of special interest is the artillery training being carried on.

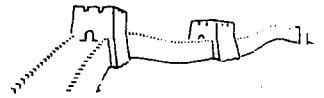
Role 1: Major Wang has been assigned to evaluate the militia and cadre training at Unit 4151 as a representative of the "organization." He wishes to find out how long it takes to train on the artillery pieces, what the current training schedules are like, the amounts of ammunition required each month for training, the number of live-fire training classes/exercises per month, etc. He also needs to find out if there are any needs (for ammunition or equipment) that the units are experiencing.

Role 2: Comrade Xu is the cadre representative of Unit 4151. Ten cadre artillery instructors have been assigned to the unit over the past 6 months, so that now it is possible to train all 50 of the cadre on a daily basis. Currently, recoilless rifle training is carried on daily between 3:00 and 6:00 p.m. with the emphasis being placed on nomenclature and firing techniques. There is only enough ammunition to live-fire once per month, so aiming the weapons is not practiced very often. If they had enough ammunition to fire every week, the cadres' firing results would be much better; they could probably hit their targets approximately 75% of the time rather than the current 25%.

Role 3: Sergeant Zhao is the local militia representative for Unit 4151. They currently have only one type of artillery piece-recoilless rifles, and they have only three of those. Of the three recoilless rifles available, only one can be used for live firing, as the other two were damaged by enemy troops before they were given to Unit 4151 for training. The unit needs at least two more artillery pieces in order to continue its training, as well as more ammunition. Three instructors for the militia servicemen have been assigned by the cadre, and that has proven sufficient to train the militia once per week (Sunday, from 12:00-4:00 p.m.). So far, 30 militiamen have completed the nomenclature, structure, and firing technique training. Five militiamen per month can continue to be trained under the current conditions.

UNIT 8

DIALOGUE



1. A: 战士也负责保养武器, 排除故障吗?
B: 他们要经常检查、经常保养; 否则, 武器就常常发生故障。小的故障他们自己会修。大的得由一个特别的单位去修。

2. A: 基本训练包不包括侦查敌人的阵地?
B: 进攻以前侦查阵地, 用炸药包爆破工事、掩体, 等等都包括在内。

3. A: 有一个干部告诉我, 你们有一个“武装泅渡”的科目。“武装泅渡”是什么意思?
B: “武装泅渡”就是带着武器游泳过河, 因为作战的时候, 不一定有船坐。如果你想过河, 可是没有船, 你应该知道怎么办。

4. A: 你们还有特别训练吧?
B: 有, 比如说, 驾驶坦克、构筑堑壕、交通壕、散兵坑, 等等都是特别训练。

5. A: 教不教战术?
B: 教。我们经常教他们演习, 让他们知道在各种情况下怎么作战。

6. A: 听说解放军的战士很会利用地形、地物掩蔽身体。
B: 是的。我们非常着重这种训练。掌握了这种战术以后, 作战的时候, 敌人就不容易发现我们。

1. A: Zhànshí yě fùzé bǎoyǎng wǔqì, páichú gùzhàng ma?
Are the servicemen also responsible for weapons maintenance and the repair of malfunctions?
- B: Tāmen yào jīngcháng jiǎnchá, jīngcháng bǎoyǎng; fǒuzé, wǔqì jiù chángcháng fāshēng gùzhàng. Xiǎode gùzhàng tāmen zìjǐ huì xiū. Dàde děi yǒu yíge tèbié dānwèi qū xiū.
They have to conduct constant inspections and maintenance; otherwise, the weapons would frequently develop malfunctions. They themselves can repair minor malfunctions. Major malfunctions must be repaired by a special unit.
2. A: Jībēn xùnliàn bāo bùbāokuò zhēnchá dírénde zhèndì?
Does basic training include reconnaissance of enemy positions?
- B: Jīngōng yǐqián zhēnchá zhèndì, yòng zhànyàobào bàopò gōngshì, yǎntǐ, dēngdēng dōu bāokuò zàinèi.
Reconnoitering positions before attack, blowing up fortifications, emplacements, etc., with dynamite charges are all included (in basic training).
3. A: Yǒu yíge gānbù gàoosu wǒ, nǐmen yǒu yíge "wǔzhuāng qiúdù" de kēmù. "Wǔzhuāng qiúdù" shì shénme yìsi?
A cadre told me you have a subject on "wǔzhuāng qiúdù." What does "wǔzhuāng qiúdù" mean?
- B: "Wǔzhuāng qiúdù" jiù shì dài-zhe wǔqì yóuyǒng guò hé, yīnwei zuòzhàn de shíhou, bù yídìng yǒu chuán zuò. Rúguǒ nǐ xiǎng guò hé, kěshi méiyǒu chuán, nǐ yīnggāi zhīdao zěnmē bàn.
"Wǔzhuāng qiúdù" means to swim across a river fully armed or with your weapons, because during combat, boats are not always available. If you wish to cross a river but don't have a boat, you should know what to do.
4. A: Nǐmen hái yǒu tèbié xùnliàn ba?
You also have special training, I suppose?
- B: Yǒu, bǐrú shuō, jiàshǐ tǎnkè, gòuzhù qiǎnhào, jiāotōnghào, sànbǐngkēng, dēngdēng dōu shì tèbié xùnliàn.
Yes, for example, operating a tank, constructing trenches, communication trenches, foxholes, etc. are all special training.

5. A: Jiāo bùjiāo zhànshù?
Do you teach tactics?
- B: Jiāo. Wǒmen jīngcháng jiāo tāmen yānxí, ràng tāmen zhīdao zài gèzhǒng qíngkuàngxià zěnmeyuè zuòzhàn.
Yes. We constantly teach them (military) exercises to let them know how to fight under various circumstances.
6. A: Tīngshuō Jiěfàngjūnde zhànshì hěn huì lìyòng dìxíng, dìwù yǐnbì shēntǐ.
I heard that the servicemen of PLA are experts in utilizing terrain and surface features for concealment.
- B: Shìde. Wǒmen fēicháng zhuózhōng zhèizhǒng xùnlìan. Zhǎngwòle zhèizhǒng zhànshù yǐhòu, zuòzhàn de shíhòu, dírén jiù bùróngyì fāxiàn wǒmen.
Yes. We greatly emphasize this type of training. After we have mastered this type of tactic, the enemy will find it difficult to discover us during combat.

VOCABULARY

包括在内	bāokuò zài nèi	to be included
爆破	bàopò	to blow up, to explode
比如说	bǐrú shuō	for example, for instance
地物	dìwù	surface features (usually man-made features of a region)
否则	fǒuzé	otherwise
工事	gōngshì	fortifications
构筑	gòuzhù	to construct (mil.)
故障	gùzhàng	malfunction
交通壕	jiāotōngháo	communication trench
驾驶	jiàshǐ	to drive, to operate (a vehicle or airplane)
进攻	jìngōng	to attack, to assault; attack (mil.)
利用	lìyòng	to make use of, to utilize, to use
排除	páichú	to overcome, to exclude (<u>páichú</u> is interpreted as "to repair" or "to eliminate" when it is used in conjunction with <u>gùzhàng</u> "malfunction.")
堑壕	qiànáo	trench (mil.)
散兵坑	sànbīngkēng	foxhole
坦克	tǎnkè	tank (mil.) (C: liàng)
武装泅渡	wǔzhuāng qiúdù	to swim across fully armed, to swim across with one's weapon
掩体	yǎntǐ	emplacement, pillbox, dugout
演习	yǎnxí	(military) exercise, (military) maneuver; to conduct (military) exercise, to conduct (military) maneuver

隐蔽	yǐnbì	to take cover, conceal
在...情况下	zài...qíngkuàng xià	under...circumstance
炸药	zhà yào	explosives, dynamite
炸药包	zhà yào bāo	dynamite charge
侦察	zhēnchá	to reconnoitre, reconnaissance (mil.)
阵地	zhèn dì	position (mil.), battlefront, front (mil.)
作战	zuò zhàn	to fight (mil.), to combat (mil.)

STORY COMPREHENSION

同志们！领导我们的干部昨天和我谈了话，要我把云南省边防部队的情况向各位同志报告一下。所以今天我简单给各位讲一讲。完了以后，要是同志们还有不太明白的地方，请随便提出来。不过，提出来的问题如果和国家的秘密有关系，我得得到组织的许可才能回答。这个，我希望同志们了解。

我是上个月四号去检查边防情况的。负责边防的部队有二十多万人，正规军和民兵都包括在内。那些边防部队都有很大的积极性。经常练习各种战术，怎么操作新武器，并且每两个星期演习一次怎么防御侵略者的进攻。大家都说已经把保卫祖国的工作准备好了。敌人如果敢来攻击我们，一定被我

Tóngzhìmen! Lǐngdǎo wǒmende gānbù zuótiān hé wǒ tánle huà, yào wǒ bǎ Yúnnán Shěng biānfáng bùduì de qíngkuàng xiàng gèwèi tóngzhì bàogào yíxià. Suǒyǐ jīntiān wǒ jiǎndān gěi gèwèi jiāngyijiǎng. Wánle yǐhòu, yàoshi tóngzhìmen hái yǒu bútàì míngbai de dìfang, qǐng suíbiàn tíchulai. Búguò, tíchulaide wèntí rúguǒ hé guójiāde mìmì yǒu guānxi, wǒ děi dédào zǔzhīde xǔkě cái néng huídá. Zhège, wǒ xīwàng tóngzhìmen liǎojiě.

Wǒ shì shàngge yuè sìhào qù jiǎnchá biānfáng qíngkuàng de. Fùzé biānfáng de bùduì yǒu èrshíduōwàn rén, zhèngguījūn hé mínbīng dōu bāokuò zài nèi. Nàxiē biānfáng bùduì dōu yǒu hěndàde jījīxìng. Jīngcháng liànxí gèzhǒng zhànshù, zěnmē cāozuò xīn wǔqì, bìngqiě měi liǎngge xīngqī yǎnxí yíci zěnmē fángyù qīnlüèzhě de jìngōng. Dàjiā dōu shuō yǐjīng bǎ bǎowèi zǔguó de gōngzuò zhǔnbèihǎole.

们消灭。

一般地说，边防部队的武器跟弹药都够用。无坐力炮也不少，不过无坐力炮的炮弹不太多，要是跟敌人真打起仗来，恐怕有问题。我看咱们得马上想办法，否则，到了作战的时候，没有炮弹，还能跟敌人打吗？

那儿的坦克很多，可是会驾驶坦克的战士好象不够。八号，星期四那天，我去检查一个单位的时候，他们应该把三十辆坦克都开出来让我看，可是只有十八辆开出来了，其他的十二辆都停在路上。我问负责的干部。他说，会驾驶坦克的战士不能都去驾驶，有的人有别的任务。比方说，构筑工事，什么的。我觉得这个可不行，咱们有坦克，可是没有人驾驶，那不是跟没有坦克一样吗？为了这个问题，我跟两个领导的干部开了两次会，

Dírén rúguǒ gǎn lái gōngjī wǒmen,
yídìng bèi wǒmen xiāomiè.

Yìbānde shuō, biānfáng bùduì
de wǔqì gēn dànnyào dōu gòuyòng.
Wúzuòlìpào yě bùshǎo, búguò wúzuòlìpào
de pàodàn bútàiduō, yàoshi gēn dírén
zhēn dǎqǐzhànglai, kǒngpà yǒu wèntí.
Wǒ kàn zánmen děi mǎshang xiǎng
bānfǎ, fǒuzé, dào le zuòzhàn de shíhou,
méiyǒu pàodàn, hái néng gēn dírén
dǎ ma?

Nàrde tǎnkè hěnduō, kěshi huì
jiàshǐ tǎnkè de zhànshì hǎoxiàng
búgòu. Bāhào, Xīngqīsì nàtiān,
wǒ qù jiǎnchá yíge dānwèi de shíhou,
tāmen yīnggāi bǎ sānshíliàng tǎnkè
dōu kāichūlai ràng wǒ kàn, kěshi
zhǐyǒu shíbāliàng kāichūlaile, qítāde
shíèrliàng dōu tíngzai lùshang. Wǒ
wèn fùzéde gānbù. Tā shuō, huì
jiàshǐ tǎnkè de zhànshì bùnéng dōu
qù jiàshǐ, yǒude rén yǒu biéde rènwù.
Bǐfāng shuō, gòuzhù gōngshì, shénmede.
Wǒ juéde zhège kě bùxíng, zánmen yǒu
tǎnkè, kěshi méiyǒu rén jiàshǐ, nà
búshì gēn méiyǒu tǎnkè yíyàng ma?
Wèile zhège wèntí, wǒ gēn liǎngsānge

想出来了一个办法，这个办法是一个秘密，我已经报告组织了。如果组织许我告诉大家，那么下次咱们开会的时候，我再向各位报告。

我刚才说，有许多坦克都停在路上，并不意味着战士们不注意保养坦克的工作。那个单位会驾驶坦克的战士都会保养坦克，也都会修理。无论是大故障还是小故障，他们自己都能修理，不必交给别的负责单位。我认为在排除故障这方面，驾驶坦克的战士们都作得很好，让我很高兴。

现在我要讲一讲敌人的情况。大家都知道敌人一直要侵略我们，三个月以前，他们的部队进攻我们的阵地，打死了五、六个正规军的战士，七、八个民兵，并且用炸药包爆破我们的工事。为了保护国家和群众的利益，我们不能不作战。但是敌人

lǐngdǎode gānbù kāile liǎngcì huì,
xiǎngchūlaile yíge bànfǎ, zhège bànfǎ
shì yíge mìmì, wǒ yǐjīng bàogào zǔzhī
le. Rúguǒ zǔzhī xǔ wǒ gàosu dàjiā,
nàme xiàcì zánmen kāihuì de shíhou,
wǒ zài xiàng gèwèi bàogào.

Wǒ gāngcái shuō, yǒu xǔduō tǎnkè
dōu tíngzài lùshang, bìng búyìwèizhe
zhànshìmen búzhùyì bǎoyǎng tǎnkè de
gōngzuò. Nàge dānwèi huì jiàshǐ
tǎnkè de zhànshì dōu huì bǎoyǎng
tǎnkè, yě dōu huì xiūlǐ. Wúlùn shì
dà gùzhàng háishì xiǎo gùzhàng, tāmen
zìjǐ dōu néng xiūlǐ, búbì jiāogěi
biéde fùzé dānwèi. Wǒ rènwéi zài
páichú gùzhàng zhè fāngmiàn, jiàshǐ
tǎnkè de zhànshìmen dōu zuòde hěn hǎo,
ràng wǒ hěn gāoxìng.

Xiànzài wǒ yào jiǎngyíjiǎng
dírénde qíngkuàng. Dàjiā dōu zhīdao
díren yìzhí yào qīnlüè wǒmen, sānge
yuè yǐqián, tāmen de bùduì jìngōng
wǒmen de zhèndì, dǎsǐle wǔ, liùge
zhèngguījūn de zhànshì, qī, bāge
mínbīng, bìngqiě yòng zhànyàobào bàopò
wǒmen de gōngshì. Wèile bǎohù guójiā
hé qúnzhòng de lìyì, wǒmen bùnéng

看见我们的部队以后就马上回到他们自己的阵地去了。在这种情况下，我们的边防部队更得注意他们的军事活动。目前我们负责情报的干部天天派人去侦察他们的阵地，搜集重要的情报。比如说，他们那边儿的地形、地物怎么样；有多少火炮，是哪几种火炮，都有些什么坦克，军队受的训练怎么样，等等，我们都知道得很清楚。我现在随便给各位同志说两、三件。

一般地说，构筑散兵坑是军队基本训练的一个科目。现在敌人还有很多士兵在学习构筑散兵坑。这个意味着那些士兵都还是新兵，当然都是不太会作战的。打起仗来，很容易被我们杀伤。此外，他们还在学习武装泅渡，这当然意味着他们要过河进攻我们。我们的阵地跟他们之间的那条河非常宽，

búzuòzhàn. Dànshi dírén kànjian wǒmende bùduì yǐhòu jiù mǎshàng huídao tāmen zìjǐde zhèndì qùle. Zài zhèzhǒng qíngkuàngxià, wǒmende biānfáng bùduì gèng dǐ zhùyì tāmende jūnshì huódòng. Mùqián wǒmen fùzé qíngbào de gānbù tiāntiān pài rén qù zhēnchá tāmende zhèndì, sōují zhòng-yào de qíngbào. Bǐrú shuō, tāmen nàbiānrde dìxíng, dìwù zěnmeyàng; yǒu duōshǎo huǒpào, shì nǎ jǐzhǒng huǒpào, dōu yǒuxiē shénme tǎnkè, jūnduì shòude xùnliàn zěnmeyàng, dēngdēng, wǒmen dōu zhīdaode hěn qíngchu. Wǒ xiànzài suǒbiàn gěi gèwèi tóngzhì shuō liǎng, sānjiàn.

Yībānde shuō, gòuzhù sànbīngkēng shì jūnduì jīběn xùnliàn de yíge kēmù. Xiànzài dírén hái yǒu hěnduō shìbīng zài xuéxí gòuzhù sànbīngkēng. Zhège yìwèizhe nàxiē shìbīng dōu háishi xīnbīng, dāngrán dōushi bútàihuì zuòzhàn de. Dǎqǐzhànglai, hěn róngyi bèi wǒmen shāshāng. Cǐwài, tāmen hái zài xuéxí wǔzhuāng qiúdù, zhè dāngrán yìwèizhe tāmen yào guòhé jìngōng wǒmen. Wǒmende zhèndì gēn

新兵带着武器游泳不是简单的事。我们的海军干部说很容易消灭他们。

从前有一个外国军官说过：“最好的防御是进攻。”这句话不错。我认为为了保卫祖国，我们应该在敌人进攻以前，先开始攻击他们。负责情报的同志说，敌人的工事、掩体等等都很容易爆破，他们构筑的堑壕跟交通壕都不好。我敢说，作战开始以后，咱们的边防部队可以在两天以内杀伤百分之八十五的敌人军队，消灭百分之九十的工事、掩体等等。

咱们自己有毛病没有？我看当然有。除了我刚才说的毛病以外，咱们的战士对利用地形、地物隐蔽身体的战术，做得还是不好。我恐怕打仗的时候战士会很容易被打死。咱们有办法吗？我看有办法。咱们现在还没跟

tāmen zhǐjiān de nàtiáo hé fēicháng
kuān, xīnbīng dài zhe wǔqì yóuyǒng
búshì jiǎndānde shì. Wǒmende hǎijūn
gànbù shuō hěn róngyì xiāomiè tāmen.

Cóngqián yǒu yíge wàiguó jūnguān
shuōguo: "Zuìhǎode fángyù shì jīngōng."
Zhèjù huà búcuò. Wǒ rènwéi wèile
bǎowèi zǔguó, wǒmen yīnggāi zài dírén
jīngōng yǐqián, xiān kāishǐ gōngjī
tāmen. Fùzé qíngbào de tóngzhì shuō,
dírén de gōngshì, yǎntǐ dēngdēng dōu
hěn róngyì bàopò, tāmen gòuzhùde
qiànáo gēn jiāotōngháo dōu bùhǎo.
Wǒ gǎnshuō, zuòzhàn kāishǐ yǐhòu,
zánmende biānfáng bùduì kěyǐ zài
liǎngtiān yǐnèi shāshāng bǎifēnzhī-
bāshíwǔde dírén jūnduì, xiāomiè
bǎifēnzhījǐǔshíde gōngshì yǎntǐ
dēngdēng.

Zánmen zìjǐ yǒu máobìng méiyǒu?
Wǒ kàn dāngrán yǒu. Chúle wǒ gāngcái
shuōde máobìng yǐwài, zánmende zhànshì
duì lìyòng dìxíng, dìwù yǐnbì shēntǐ
de zhànshù, zuòde háishi bùhǎo. Wǒ
kǒngpà dǎzhàngde shíhou zhànshì huì
hěn róngyì bèi dǎsǐ. Zánmen yǒu
bànfǎ ma? Wǒ kàn yǒu bànfǎ. Zánmen

敌人作战呢，应该马上利用这个时候训练战士怎么隐蔽。战士们都有积极性，愿意学习、愿意练习。几天以后，就一定都能掌握了。

xiànzài hái méi gēn dírén zuòzhàn ne,
yīnggāng mǎshàng liyòng zhège shíhou
xùnliàn zhànshì zěnme yǐnbì. Zhàn-
shìmen dōu yǒu jījīxìng, yuànyì
xuéxí, yuànyì liànxí. Jǐtiān yǐhòu,
jiù yīdìng dōu néng zhǎngwò le.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS

for

STORY COMPREHENSION

1. Who told the speaker to speak to the audience?
2. What is the subject?
3. Why does he think he can't answer all of the questions on the spot?
4. a. When did he take the trip on which he reports?
b. What was his mission?
5. What was the size of his troops?
6. What were included in the troops?

MST, Unit 8

7. What did the troops practice?
8. What did the troops do once every two weeks?
9. What will happen to the enemy if they attack?
10. What is not too many?
11. What seems to be insufficient in conjunction with the tanks they have?
12. On the 8th (Thursday), what was the unit supposed to do?
13. Describe what actually happened as compared to what the unit was supposed to do.
14. What reason did the responsible cadre/cadre in charge give the speaker?
15. What did the speaker do before a solution was reached?
16. Why can't the speaker let the audience know what the solution is?

17. What kind of malfunctions can the tank drivers repair by themselves?
18. What did the aggressor do to the troops three months ago?
19. On what two (2) missions were the persons sent out by the intelligence cadres?
20. What made the speaker think that many of the enemy enlisted personnel were new soldiers?
21. What signified the enemy's intention of crossing the river?
22. What is/are easy to blow up?
23. The speaker is sure that the Chinese troops would be able to accomplish two (2) things within two days after war broke out. What are those two (2) things?
24. What weakness does the speaker think the Chinese troops have?
25. In the speaker's opinion, what ought to be done immediately?

STORY COMPREHENSION
Answers to Questions

1. Who told the speaker to speak to the audience?
(the leader [of our] cadre)
2. What is the subject?
([the situation of] the border defense units [of Yunnan Province])
3. Why does he think he can't answer all of the questions on the spot?
(some are related to national secrets)
4. a. When did he take the trip on which he reports?
(last month, 4th)
b. What was his mission?
(inspect border defense troops)
5. What was the size of the troops?
(200,000+)
6. What were included in the troops?
(Regular Army and militia were both included)
7. What did the troops practice?
(various tactics, operation of new weapons)
8. What did the troops do once every two weeks?
(practiced maneuvers to defend against attack of aggressors)

9. What will happen to the enemy if they attack?
(be wiped out by us)
10. What is not too many?
(recoilless rifle shells)
11. What seems to be insufficient in conjunction with the tanks they have?
(tank drivers)
12. On the 8th (Thursday), what was the unit supposed to do?
(drive out 30 tanks [to let him look at them])
13. Describe what actually happened as compared to what the unit was supposed to do.
(18 driven out, 12 left on the road)
14. What reason did the responsible cadre/cadre in charge give the speaker?
(all of the drivers could not drive, some had other duties)
15. What did the speaker do before a solution was reached?
(held (two) meetings with [2 or 3] of cadre leaders)
16. Why can't the speaker let the audience know what the solution is?
(it is a secret)
17. What kind of malfunctions can the tank drivers repair by themselves?
(all OR large and small)
18. What did the aggressor do to the troops three months ago?
(attacked our position and killed 5-6 RA troops and 7-8 militiamen/
blew up defense works)

MST, Unit 8

19. On what two (2) missions were the persons sent out by the intelligence cadres?
(1. inspect their [enemy] positions, and 2. collect important intelligence information)
20. What made the speaker think that many of the enemy enlisted personnel were new soldiers?
([still] learning to dig [construct] foxholes)
21. What signified the enemy's intention of crossing the river?
(practice swimming with weapons)
22. What is/are easy to blow up?
(enemy defense works/emplacements [pillboxes] [dugouts])
23. The speaker is sure that the Chinese troops would be able to accomplish two (2) things within two days after war broke out. What are those two (2) things?
(1. kill/wound 85% of enemy troops, and 2. destroy 90% of the fortification and emplacements)
24. What weakness does the speaker think the Chinese troops have?
(using terrain/surface features to conceal themselves)
25. In the speaker's opinion, what ought to be done immediately?
(train the troops in concealment/taking cover)

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 为什么战士要负责保养武器？
Wèishénme zhànshì yào fùzé bǎoyǎng wǔqì?
2. 美国陆军的基本训练都包括些什么？
Měiguó lùjūn de jīběn xùnliàn dōu bāokuò xiē shénme?
3. 什么时候侦察敌人的阵地？
Shénme shíhou zhēnchá dírén de zhèndì?
4. 请你说一说怎么爆破敌人的阵地。
Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō zěnmē bàopò dírén de zhèndì.
5. 特别军事训练里头包括些什么？
Tèbié jūnshì xùnliàn lǐtōu bāokuò xiē shénme?
6. 如果不教战士们学习战术，他们知道怎么打仗吗？为什么？
Rúguǒ bù jiāo zhànshìmen xuéxí zhànshù, tāmen zhīdao zěnmē dǎzhàng ma? Wèishénme?
7. 为什么武器要经常检查？
Wèishénme wǔqì yào jīngcháng jiǎnchá?
8. 经常演习对战士有什么用？
Jīngcháng yǎnxí duì zhànshì yǒu shénme yòng?

9. 武器为什么会发生故障？
Wǔqì wèishénme huì fāshēng gùzhàng?
10. 请你说一说战士在受基本训练的时候都用些什么武器？
Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō zhànshì zài shòu jīběn xùnliàn de shíhou dōu yòng xiē shénme wǔqì?
11. 驾驶坦克的战士都得是党员吗？为什么？
Jiàshǐ tǎnkè de zhànshì dōu děi shì dǎngyuán ma? Wèishénme?
12. 坦克在进攻敌人阵地的时候有什么任务？
Tǎnkè zài jīngōng dírén zhèndì de shíhou yǒu shénme rènwù?
13. 请你说说炸药包在作战的时候为什么很有用？
Qǐng nǐ shuōshuō zhànyàobāo zài zuòzhàn de shíhou wèishénme hěn yǒuyòng?
14. 进攻敌人以前要先作什么？
Jīngōng dírén yǐqián yào xiān zuò shénme?
15. 怎么训练战士在各种情况下作战？
Zěnmē xùnliàn zhànshì zài gèzhǒng qíngkuàngxià zuòzhàn?
16. 作战的时候，反坦克炮有什么用？
Zuòzhàn de shíhou, fǎntǎnkèpào yǒu shénme yòng?

17. 检查武器是谁的责任？要是武器发生故障谁负责修理？
Jiǎnchá wǔqì shì shéide zérèn? Yàoshi wǔqì fāshēng gùzhàng shéi fùzé xiūlǐ?
18. 工事和掩体在战时有什么用处？
Gōngshì hé yǎntǐ zài zhànshí yǒu shénme yòngchù?
19. 破坏敌人工事和掩体最有效的武器有那些？
Pòhuài dírén gōngshì hé yǎntǐ zuìyǒuxiào de wǔqì yǒu nǎxiē?
20. 一辆坦克需要几个战士来操作？他们各人的任务是什么？
Yíliàng tǎnkè xūyào jǐge zhànshì lái cāozuò? Tāmen gèrén de rènwù shì shénme?
21. 如果不教战术，战士们知道在各种情况下怎么作战吗？
Rúguǒ bùjiāo zhànshù, zhànshìmen zhīdao zài gèzhǒng qíngkuàngxià zěnmé zuòzhàn ma?
22. 构筑工事，掩体，等等是不是一种战术？为什么？
Gòuzhù gōngshì, yǎntǐ, děngděng shìbùshì yìzhǒng zhànshù? Wèishénme?
23. 军队教不教战士学习坦克的构造，为什么？
Jūnduì jiāobujiāo zhànshì xuéxí tǎnkè de gòuzào, wèishénme?
24. 炸药包在作战的时候有什么用？
Zhànyàobāo zài zuòzhàn de shíhou yǒu shénme yòng?

25. 反坦克炮是打坦克的重要武器吗？为什么？
Fǎntǎnkèpào shì dǎ tǎnkè de zhòngyào wǔqì ma? Wèishénme?
26. 请你说说高射炮跟反坦克炮的任务不一样的地方？
Qǐng nǐ shuōshuō gāoshèpào gēn fǎntǎnkèpào de rènwù bù-yí-yàng de dìfang?
27. 基本训练和特别训练的项目有什么不一样？
Jīběn xùnliàn hé tèbié xùnliàn de xiàngmù yǒu shénme bù-yí-yàng?
28. 战士需要学习坦克的部件名称吗？为什么？
Zhànshì xūyào xuéxí tǎnkè de bùjiàn míngchēng ma? Wèishénme?
29. 基本训练也包括装填炮弹和实弹射击吗？为什么？
Jīběn xùnliàn yě bāokuò zhuāngtián pàodàn hé shídàn shèjī ma?
Wèishénme?
30. 听说在中国成份好的战士才可以担任军队里重要的职务，为什么？
Tīngshuō zài Zhōngguó chéngfèn hǎo de zhànshì cái kěyǐ dānrèn
jūnduìlǐ zhòngyào de zhíwù, wèishénme?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. We must conduct military exercises to maintain our soldiers fighting skills; otherwise, they will forget how to shoot and how to operate their weapons.

2. For instance, our tanks must be able to operate under various conditions; cars do not.

3. Our special training should include the use of dynamite charges to destroy enemy pillboxes and the use of antitank guns to destroy tanks.

4. Learning the skill of killing with a bayonet would be a part of basic training; learning how to operate a tank would be a type of special training.

5. The soldiers are responsible for the maintenance of their weapons, which include rifles, pistols, and machine guns.

6. The use of tanks to assault enemy fortifications is a type of special tactic and requires special training.
7. Special tactics also includes reconnaissance of positions before an attack, guerrilla warfare, and bombing by airplanes.
8. Only Party members and trustworthy servicemen can undertake important missions or operate (fly) airplanes; otherwise, they might not come back.
9. Machine guns and rifles require constant inspection and maintenance; otherwise, they would frequently develop malfunctions.
10. In time of war we have to rely on our laborers, not only to construct fortifications, but also to fight in battles.
11. In time of war we can depend upon the militia to use guerrilla warfare to conduct reconnaissance and collect intelligence information.
12. The naval fortifications in Shanghai include AA guns, machine gun emplacements and pillboxes.

13. Under what circumstances would you use dynamite charges to destroy tanks? To do so all the time would surely cause a lot of our soldiers to be killed.

14. Last night three enemy planes bombed our fortifications and caused heavy damage. We don't have enough AA guns to shoot them.

15. If an airplane develops a malfunction during flight who will fix it? Do pilots know how to repair malfunctions?

16. During basic training, when you are told to stand at attention, can you be at ease whenever you want?

17. After he joined the Army, he could drive a tank and fly an airplane; however, he still doesn't know how to drive a car.

18. Our militia said that the enemy fortifications consist of (have) six pillboxes; they also have machine guns, AA guns, and tanks. We will need a lot of dynamite to destroy them.

19. Yesterday the enemy swam across the river with their weapons and destroyed six pillboxes. We have to change our tactics.

20. We won't attack the enemy until after our planes have bombed the enemy positions. During the attack we will need dynamite to blow up enemy pillboxes.
21. After our soldiers are finished with basic training, some will have special training and some will go to the front to fight.
22. If a tank develops a malfunction on the battlefield, is the tank driver responsible for repairs?
23. The soldiers who drive the tanks are responsible for maintenance and repair of malfunctions.
24. In the first week of training we don't let them use bullets. After they know how to aim (them), we let them shoot using bullets.
25. Out of the one hundred times of shooting, one has to hit the target ninety times.
26. Our tanks went out to reconnoitre the conditions in the northeast part of the battlefield; however, it's been one week and they haven't returned yet.

MST, Unit 8

27. Some militia units have heavy weapons, but our unit only has light weapons such as pistols, rifles, and a few machine guns.

28. We have just received some intelligence information which said the enemy would use guerrilla warfare and harass our tanks with explosive charges and antitank guns.

29. Before we can attack, we must know what types of fortifications and how many tanks, AA guns, and planes the enemy has.

30. When shooting targets, we let our militiamen load their rifles with live ammunition. This lets them practice aiming and shooting accurately.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Zài fángyù dírén jīngōng de shíhou, sànbǐngkēng hé yǎntǐ kéyǐ bǎohù wǒmen zhànshì búráng tāmen bèi dírén huǒpào shāshāng.
2. Rúguǒ dírén de tǎnkè yǐjīng hěn jīnle, zài láibùjǐ shǐyòng fǎntǎnkèpào de qǐngkuàngxia, kéyǐ yòng zhànyàobào qù pòhuài tā.
3. Rùwǔ xùnliàn qǐjiān, chúle lìzhèng, shāoxī, shídàn shèjǐ dēngdēng kēmù yǐwài, gòuzhù gōngshì yě bāokuò zài nèi.
4. Yìbānde shuō, dírén de tǎnkè lái jīngōng de shíhou, wǒmende fǎntǎnkèpào zhǐ néng zài yídìng de jùlǐ fāshè cái néng dǎhuài tāmen.
5. Hǎode fángyù gōngshì yīnggāi yǒu jiāotōngháo bǎ bùtóng dìdiǎn de gōngshì liánjiē qǐlai.
6. Xùnliàn zhèngguǐjūn zuòzhàn de shíhou, wǔzhuāng qiūdù shì yíge zhòngyào-de jūnshì kēmù.
7. Měi yíge zhànshì chúle yīnggāi shúxi bùqiāng de shǐyòng yǐwài yě yīnggāi zhīdao zěnmeyàng páichú gùzhàng.

8. Yìbānde shuō, yóujíduì búhuì zhēnde gēn zhèngguójūn zuòzhàn, tāde mùdì zhǐshì rǎoluàn huòshì tōuxí zhèngguójūn.
9. Jùshuō zài Yījiūsìjiūnián yǐqián Zhōngguó yóujíduì méiyóu gāoshèpào. Tāmen yòng jīqiāng shèjī fǎndòngpài de fēijī.
10. Dānrèn zhēnchá de shìbīng dào dírén zhèndì qù sōují qíngbào de shíhou yào huì lǐyòng dīwù lái yǐnbì zìjǐ.
11. Zuòzhàn yǎnxí gēn zhēnde dǎzhàng yíyàng, cānjiā yǎnxí de zhǐzhànyuán kěnéng bèi shāshāng.
12. Yìbānde shuō, dānrèn jiàshǐ tǎnkè de shìbīng bùyídìng huì xiūlǐ tǎnkè shàngbianr de huǒpào, kěshì tā yǐnggāi zhīdao zěnme bǎoyǎng tāmen.
13. Bùduì zài dǎzhàng de shíhou, fùzérén yǒude shíhou huì lǐyòng shíjiān jiào zhànshì gòuzhù línshíde sànbīngkēng.
14. Zhànshì zài xuéxí bàopò gōngshì de kēmù yǐqián, xiān děi xuéxí gèzhǒng zhāyàobào de míngchēng, xìngnéng gēn shǐyòng de fāngfǎ dēngdēng.
15. Zài xùnliàn shìbīng de jūnshì xuéxiàolǐ yǒu gèzhǒng jiāo xuésheng yòngde sànbīngkēng, yǎntǐ, dīwù shénmede.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate" because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 8

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Major Bradford and Comrade Li Shi Ying continue their discussion about basic training in the Chinese Army.

1. B: During basic training, are the servicemen taught weapons maintenance and how to repair malfunctions?

L: 他们不但学习怎么保养武器和排除故障，干部还经常检查他们的武器和装备，要不然等到用的时候发生了故障就不能正常的使用了。

Tāmen búdàn xuéxí zěnmē bǎoyǎng wǔqì hé páichú gùzhàng, gānbù hái jīngcháng jiǎnchá tāmen de wǔqì hé zhuāngbèi, yàoburán děngdào yòngde shíhòu fāshēng le gùzhàng jiù bùnéng zhèngcháng de shǐyòng le.

2. B: But are they taught how to repair malfunctions?

L: 他们学习修理武器的小毛病。如果是大故障就得送到特别的保养单位去修理。

Tāmen xuéxí xiūlǐ wǔqì de xiǎo máobīng. Rúguǒ shì dà gùzhàng jiù děi sòngdào tèbié de bǎoyǎng dānwèi qù xiūlǐ.

3. B: Does basic training include how to conduct reconnaissance of enemy positions?

L: 新兵得学习基本的侦察技术。象攻击以前先侦察敌人的阵地、破坏敌人的工事和掩体等等。他们得学习根据不同的作战需要来侦察和在什么情况下应该继续侦察。此外，他们也应该知道除了空军的侦察以外，步兵巡逻也是一种搜集情报的好办法。

Xīnbīng děi xuéxí jīběn de zhēnchá jìshù. Xiàng gōngjī yǐqián xiān zhēnchá dírénde zhèndì, pòhuài dírénde gōngshì hé yǎntǐ dēngděng. Tāmen děi xuéxí gēnjù bùtóng de zuòzhàn xūyào lái zhēnchá hé zài shénme qíngkuàngxià yīnggāi jìxù zhēnchá. Cǐwài, tāmen yě yīnggāi zhīdao chúle kōngjūn de zhēnchá yǐwài, bùbīng xúnluó yěshì yìzhǒng sōují qíngbào de hǎo bànfǎ.

4. B: That's all very interesting. Can you give me some examples of special training that the inductee receives?

L: 好的, 比方说新兵得学习怎么驾驶坦克, 怎么构筑工事、掩体, 还得学习巡逻跟打游击战的方法。
Hǎode, bǐfāngshuō xīnbīng děi xuéxí zěnmē jiàshǐ tǎnkè, zěnmē gòuzhù gōngshì, yǎntǐ, hái děi xuéxí xúnluó gēn dǎ yóujīzhàn de fāngfǎ.

5. B: Do the conscripts learn any tactics?

L: 当然, 他们常常参加军事演习、学习在各种不同的情况下作战。

Dāngrán, tāmen chángcháng cānjiā jūnshì yǎnxí, xuéxí zài gèzhǒng bùtóngde qíngkuàngxià zuòzhàn.

6. B: How do they learn so much in so little time?

L: 跟你想的一样, 他们学不了那么多科目。我们只教新兵最基本的项目。否则, 他们不可能把所有的东西都学会。

Gēn nǐ xiǎngde yíyàng, tāmen xuébùliǎo nàme duō kēmù. Wǒmen zhǐ jiāo xīnbīng zuì jīběnde xiàngmù. Fǒuzé, tāmen bùkěnéng bǎ suǒyǒude dōngxi dōu xuéhuì.

7. B: I understand. What are they doing over there?

L: 那几个人正在预备炸药包来练习爆破掩体。

Nà jǐge rén zhèngzài yùbèi zhànyàobāo lái liànxí bàopò yǎntǐ.

8. B: I see that machine gun bullets are fired over their heads. This certainly is realistic training.

L: 是的, 我们觉得应该把训练作得越真越好。如果不让他们象在作战的情况下去爆破掩体、工事, 这种训练就等于没训练一样。

Shìde, wǒmen juéde yīnggāi bǎ xùnliàn zuòde yuèzhēn yuèhǎo. Rúguǒ búràng tāmen xiàng zài zuòzhàn de qíngkuàngxià qù bàopò yǎntǐ, gōngshì, zhèzhǒng xùnliàn jiù děngyú méi xùnliàn yíyàng.

9. B: I agree. What is that group of soldiers doing over there?

L: 他们正在练习用无坐力炮来攻击坦克。那辆当目标用的坦克已经老得不能修理了。不过我们还拿它来作练习用。中国军队不浪费任何东西。

Tāmen zhèngzài liànxí yòng wúzuòlìpào lái gōngjí tǎnkè. Nàliàng dāng mùbiāo yòngde tǎnkè yǐjīng lǎode bùnéng xiūlǐ le. Búguò wǒmen hái ná tā lái zuò liànxí yòng. Zhōngguó jūnduì búlàngfèi rénhé dōngxi.

10. B: What kind of tank is it?

L: 这是一辆跟日本打仗的时候，从日本人那儿得来的。已经非常旧了。

Zhè shì yíliàng gēn Rìběn dǎzhàng de shíhou, cóng Rìběn rén nàr déláide. Yǐjīng fēicháng jiùle.

11. B: I can see that it is an old tank. Well, I can see that you are very busy, so I'll leave now. Thank you for helping me to understand basic training in the Chinese Army.

L: 很高兴有这个机会跟你讲一讲这些训练的情形。我们中国人都觉得人民解放军是大家的，解放军的光荣就是大家的光荣。也喜欢让外国朋友来看一看他们训练的情形。希望你下次有机会再来。

Hěn gāoxìng yǒu zhège jīhuì gēn nǐ jiǎngyíjiǎng zhèxiē xùnliàn de qíngxíng. Wǒmen Zhōngguó rén dōu juéde Rénmín Jiěfàngjūn shì dàjiāde, Jiěfàngjūn de guāngróng jiùshì dàjiāde guāngróng. Yě xǐhuan ràng wàiguó péngyou lái kànkan tāmen xùnliàn de qíngxíng. Xīwàng nǐ xiàcì yǒu jīhuì zài lái.

12. B: I also hope to see you again, Comrade Li. Good-bye.

L: 再见。

Zàijiàn.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Three members of the PLA have met to discuss the best methods of defense against the enemy aggressors who have just entered their area and are moving toward "Dongnan Cun (village)."

Role 1: Major Xu is responsible for the fortifications around "Dongnan Cun." The current fortifications include 30 pillboxes and four miles of trenches. Xu is currently using the village militiamen to conceal all of the current defensive positions, as well as to construct new trenches and communications trenches. He feels that the units must pay special attention to concealing the defensive antitank gun and machine gun positions, with the antiaircraft gun positions being of lesser importance. Foxholes also need to be constructed in case the enemy is able to destroy the pillboxes with their artillery.

Role 2: Major Sun is responsible for defensive tactics in the vicinity of "Dongnan Cun." He has already assigned three reconnaissance units to patrol 15 miles north of the village. Each unit includes four reconnaissance cars (vehicles) and two light tanks. These units have the responsibility of providing/collecting intelligence information regarding the enemy units, and are to attack and/or harass the enemy units when possible. He needs three more tanks and six more reconnaissance cars to patrol northwest of the village and to collect more information.

Role 3: Comrade Fang is the "organization" representative responsible for the defense of the county in which "Dongnan Cun" is located, and therefore is the overall commander. He considers "Dongnan Cun" to be the backbone of his defensive plans, and so has come to talk with the two local commanders. He feels that as many trenches and pillboxes should be constructed as possible, even if the peasants have to be used for labor, and that camouflage is of little importance. There should be machine guns or antitank guns placed in all pillboxes, and antiaircraft guns should be used as antitank guns, if possible. As much intelligence information as possible should be collected, and six additional light tanks can be assigned to patrol duties, but the reconnaissance units must not attack or harass the enemy regardless of the situation.

Scenario 2

Situation: Three members of the PLA have met to discuss the best methods of attacking the enemy forces occupying "Dongnan Cun."

Role 1: Major Huang is in charge of friendly reconnaissance units. According to intelligence information gathered from the peasants in the vicinity, the enemy forces include approximately 1500 soldiers, 75 tanks, 100+ machine guns, and 15 antitank guns. Reconnaissance has reported that the area east of the village is the weakest, as its fortifications include only 25-30 pillboxes, three miles of trenches, and some man-made terrain features. Foxholes are being constructed, but will not be finished for 48 hours. The area north of the village is the strongest defensively, with 100 pillboxes, 150+ foxholes, and three miles of trenches. The western area has only 15-20 pillboxes, but has many man-made terrain features which means that tanks could not be used to attack from this direction. To the south of the village is a large (wide) river, so no fortifications have been constructed.

Role 2: Major Jiang is in charge of operations. At present, the friendly forces have been divided into five units: Unit #1 (25 tanks + 500 soldiers), Unit #2 (10 tanks + 400 soldiers), and Unit #3 (15 tanks + 400 soldiers) are all in attack positions to the north, east, and west of the village (respectively). Unit #4 (20 tanks + 450 soldiers) will be ready to attack within 24 hours, as they are awaiting artillery shells for 10 of the tanks. Unit #5 (20 tanks + 450 soldiers) will be ready to attack within 16 hours, as four of their tanks are being repaired. Forces can be shifted between Units #1, #2, and #3, but it will require about 8 hours. Forces can also be shifted to the south, with a time requirement of 10 hours.

Role 3: Comrade Sun is the commander, and wants to reassign forces in order to attack as follows:

- 1) Units #1 and #2 will attack the eastern sector together, with Unit #5 also attacking if Units #1 and #3 have trouble destroying the enemy defensive positions. Eastern attack unit to include at least 50 tanks and 750 soldiers.
- 2) Unit #3 to attack the western area prior to Units #1 and #2 beginning attack on eastern area. Western attack force will consist of five tanks (to destroy pillboxes, etc.) + 400 soldiers; and will attack for at least 45 minutes hoping the enemy will assign units from the eastern area to defend the western area.
- 3) Unit #4 to attack the southern area when Unit #3 attacks from the west. Southern attack force will consist of 0 tanks + 600 soldiers, who will cross the river at night before the attack. Unit #4 will attack for at least 45 minutes, and should use all possible man-made terrain features for covers.

When can the attack be made? Should it be made at night?

Scenario 3

Situation: Two training officers have met with the unit commander to decide upon the training plan for their unit.

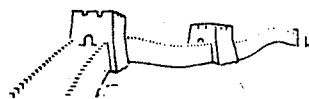
Role 1: Major Zhang is in charge of the training for defensive tactics. He feels that the construction of defensive fortifications and the utilization of man-made terrain features are the most important points to be mastered. He feels that of the 40-hour weekly training time available, 5 hours should be devoted to drill, 20 hours to constructing trenches and pillboxes, 10 hours to using man-made terrain features for cover, and 5 hours to operating antitank and machine guns.

Role 2: Major Wu is in charge of attack (offensive) training for the unit. He feels that "the best defense is a good offense (attack)," and that all available training time should be spent in exercises emphasizing attack/assault tactics. Special emphasis should be placed on destroying enemy fortifications and pillboxes with both dynamite charges and recoilless rifles. Emphasis should also be given to swimming across rivers fully armed and using trees, man-made terrain features, etc., to conceal attacking soldiers. He also feels that at least 8 hours per week should be spent in reconnaissance/harassment tactics, and one full day devoted to marksmanship.

Role 3: Comrade Xu is the "organization" representative for military training, and his is the final authority for setting the final training schedule. His only requirement is that at least 4 hours per week should be spent helping the peasants with agricultural or construction work for political reasons. Other than this, he only requires that the schedule include both offensive (attack) and defensive tactics, but the priorities for the specific types of training and time devoted for each must be decided by Zhang and Wu, with Comrade Xu acting as the mediator.

UNIT 9

DIALOGUE



1. A: 你们空军跟海军的训练怎么样?
B: 空军和海军的训练是比较有技术性的, 所以我们得抓训练的质量; 那么, 才赶得上先进国家的水平。

2. A: 空军主要的训练都包括些什么?
B: 飞行训练当然是最重要的了。仪表飞行, 在各种情况下起飞、降落; 白天跟夜里的射击和轰炸; 这些都是主要的项目。此外, 还有高炮跟雷达的操作训练。

3. A: 海军呢?
B: 一般地说, 海军的训练包括航海、操作各种武器和仪器、登陆战演习, 等等。鱼雷艇的指战员还要学习偷袭的战术。

4. A: 为什么海军的训练也包括登陆战呢? 登陆的部队不都是陆军吗?
B: 陆军跟海军陆战队都有登陆的任务。可是得由海军配合才行。

5. A: 我还有一个问题。“指战员”是什么意思?
B: 我很简单的讲一讲吧。“指战员”就是指挥员跟战士。你们美国人说军官跟士兵, 是不是?

6. A: 是的。听说你们训练用的器材不够。
B: 这个不是严重的问题。我们把旧的装备拿来训练学员；新的用来作战。
7. A: 你刚才说的那些项目，是不是每个新战士都得学习？
B: 不必都学习。如果一个学员将来的工作是操作雷达，那么他就不用学习飞行。

1. A: Nǐmen kōngjūn gēn hǎijūn de xùnliàn zěnmeyàng?
How is the training of your Air Force and Navy?
- B: Kōngjūn hé hǎijūn de xùnliàn shì bǐjiào yǒu jìshùxìng de, suǒyǐ wǒmen děi zhuā xùnliàn de zhīliàng, nàme, cái gǎn-deshàng xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng.
The training of the Air Force and the Navy is relatively technical; therefore, we must stress the quality of training; then, and only then, can we catch up with the standards of the advanced nations.
2. A: Kōngjūn zhǔyào de xùnliàn dōu bāokuò xiē shénme?
What does the main training of the Air Force include?
- B: Fēixíng xùnliàn dāngrán shì zuì zhòngyào de le. Yíbiǎo fēixíng, zài gèzhǒng qíngkuàngxià qǐfēi, jiàngluò; báitiān gēn yèli de shèjì hé hōngzhà; zhèixiē dōu shì zhǔyào de xiàngmù. Cǐwài, hái yǒu gāopào gēn léidá de cāozuò xùnliàn.
Aviation training, of course, is most important. Instrument flight, taking off and landing under various (kinds of) circumstances, and firing and bombing in daytime and nighttime; these are all main items. In addition, there is training on the operation of AA guns and radar.
3. A: Hǎijūn ne?
How about the Navy?
- B: Yìbānde shuō, hǎijūnde xùnliàn bāokuò hánghǎi, cāozuò gèzhǒng wǔqì hé yíqì, dēnglùzhàn yǎnxí, dēngdēng. Yúléitǐngde zhǐzhànyuán hái yào xuéxí tōuxí de zhànshù.
Generally speaking, naval training includes navigation, operating all kinds of weapons and instruments, amphibious warfare exercises, etc. Officers and men of a torpedo boat must also learn surprise attack tactics.
4. A: Wèishénme hǎijūnde xùnliàn yě bāokuò dēnglùzhàn ne? Dēnglù de bùduì bù dōu shì lùjūn ma?
Why does naval training also include amphibious warfare? Aren't the amphibious landing troops all Army troops?
- B: Lùjūn gēn hǎijūn lùzhànduì dōu yǒu dēnglù de rènwù. Kěshì děi yǒu hǎijūn pèihé cái xíng.
Both the Army and Marine Corps have amphibious landing missions, but they must have the cooperation of the Navy.

5. A: Wǒ hái yǒu yíge wèntí.
"Zhǐzhānyuán" shì shénme
yìsi?
- B: Wǒ hěn jiǎndānde jiǎngyìjiāng
ba. "Zhǐzhānyuán" jiù shì
zhǐhuīyuán gēn zhànshì.
Nǐmen Měiguó rén shuō jūnguān
gēn shìbīng, shì bushì?
- I have another question. What does
"zhǐzhānyuán" mean?
- Let me put it in very simple terms.
"Zhǐzhānyuán" means commanders
and fighters (officers and men).
You Americans say officers and
enlisted personnel, right?
6. A: Shìde. Tīngshuō nǐmen xùnliàn
yòngde qìcái búgòu.
- B: Zhèige búshì yánzhòngde wèntí.
Wǒmen bǎ jiùde zhuāngbèi
nàlai xùnliàn xuéyuán;
xīnde yònglai zuòzhàn.
- Right. (By the way,) I understand
that you don't have enough of
the materials and equipment used
for training.
- That isn't a serious problem. We
bring in old equipment for train-
ing the students; new equipment
is used for combat.
7. A: Nǐ gāngcái shuōde nèixiē
xiàngmù, shì búshì měige xīn
zhànshì dōu děi xuéxí?
- B: Búbì dōu xuéxí. Rúguǒ yíge
xuéyuán jiānglái de gōngzuò
shì cāozuò léidá, nàme tā
jiù búyòng xuéxí fēixíng.
- Those items you just mentioned,
does every new serviceman have
to learn all of them?
- (There's) no need to learn all of
them. For instance, if a stu-
dent's assignment (work) in the
future is to operate radar, (in
that case) he doesn't need to
study aviation.

VOCABULARY

此外	cǐwài	besides, in addition
登陆	dēnglù	to land (amphibiously)
登陆战	dēnglùzhàn	amphibious warfare
飞行	fēixíng	aviation; to fly
高炮	gāopào (abbr. of gāoshèpào)	AA gun (C: mén)
赶得上	gǎndeshàng	to be able to catch up with
海军陆战队	hǎijūnlùzhànduì	Marine Corps
航海	hánghǎi	navigation (ocean)
降落	jiàngluò	to land (aircraft or paratrooper)
雷达	léidá	radar
器材	qìcái	materials and equipment
偷袭	tōuxí	surprise attack (mil.); to raid (mil.), to make a surprise attack (mil.)
项目	xiàngmù	item
先进国家	xiānjìn guójiā	advanced nation
学员	xuéyuán	student (in an institution or class for specialized training)
仪表	yíbiǎo	instrument (in science and techno- logy [Air Force])
仪表飞行	yíbiǎo fēixíng	instrument flight; to fly by Instru- ment Flight Rules (IFR)
仪器	yíqì	instrument (in science and techno- logy [a general term for Army as well as for Navy])
(有)技术性的	(yǒu) jìshùxìng de	to be technical (in nature)
(有)···性的	(yǒu) ...xìng de	to be of a ...nature

鱼雷艇	yúléitǐng	torpedo boat(s) (C: sōu)
指挥员	zhǐhuīyuán	(military) commander (actually referring to officers as opposed to enlisted personnel)
质量	zhìliàng	quality
指战员	zhǐzhànyuán	officers and men
抓	zhuā	to stress, to pay special attention to
装备	zhuāngbèi	equipment; to equip

STORY COMPREHENSION

同志们，上个月我到山东省去检查他们训练空军和海军的情况。今天我把那些情况向各位报告一下，并且跟各位讨论讨论怎么把他们的训练搞得更好一点儿。

我先说空军的训练，山东跟全国其他各省一样都很着重飞行训练。学员有干劲，干部也有干劲。起飞跟降落都做得很好。可是这些都在白天教、白天练习。我问干部晚上练习不练习，他说晚上不行，因为有危险。他这个看法可不对。驾驶飞机的同志应该在什么情况下都能起飞、降落。现在，晚上不练习，将来打仗的时候，是不是到了晚上咱们的空军就起飞、降落了呢？怕危险的人还能保卫祖国、防御侵略者吗？射击跟轰炸也是很重要的训练项目；一般地说，

Tóngzhìmen, shàngge yuè wǒ dào Shāndōng Shěng qù jiǎnchá tāmen xùnliàn kōngjūn hé hǎijūn de qíngkuàng. Jīntiān wǒ bǎ nàxiē qíngkuàng xiàng gèwèi bàogào yíxià, bìngqiě gēn gèwèi tāolùn tāolùn zěnme bǎ tāmen de xùnliàn gǎode hǎoyídiǎnr.

Wǒ xiān shuō kōngjūn de xùnliàn, Shāndōng gēn quánguó qítā gèshěng yíyàng dōu hěn zhuózhòng fēixíng xùnliàn. Xuéyuán yǒu gànjin, gānbù yě yǒu gànjin. Qǐfēi gēn jiàngluò dōu zuòde hěn hǎo. Kěshì zhèxiē dōu zài báitiān jiāo, báitiān liànxí. Wǒ wèn gānbù wǎnshang liànxí búliànxí, tā shuō wǎnshang bùxíng, yīnwei yǒu wēixiǎn. Tā zhège kànfǎ kě búduì. Jiànshǐ fēijī de tóngzhì yīnggāi zài shénme qíngkuàngxia dōu néng qǐfēi, jiàngluò. Xiànzài, wǎnshang búliànxí, jiānglái dǎzhàng de shíhou, shǐ búshì dào le wǎnshang zánmen de kōngjūn jiù bùqǐfēi jiàngluò le ne? Pà wēixiǎn de rén hái néng bǎowèi zǔguó, fángyù

学员做得很不错。不过，也有两三个学员做得很坏。负责训练的干部说，已经反复地教他们，要他们经常练习，可是进步得很慢。有的干部觉得这两、三个学员不应该学习飞行，应该学习别的科目。组织认为他们的成分好，可以留下来。我认为不应该留下来。留下来就是意味着浪费国家的钱。我已经把我的意见向组织提出来了。

我检查空军训练的时候，不但跟干部谈话，也跟学员谈话。看看有没有需要改良的地方。好几个学员跟我说他们练习飞行的时间太少，练习仪表飞行的时间也太少。有的人还说在先进国家的空军，每一个学员得练习飞行一百小时才可以毕业；在咱们的空军每个学员只练习二十

qīnlüèzhě ma? Shèjǐ gēn hōngzhà yě shì hěn zhōngyàode xùnliàn xiàngmù; yībānde shuō, xuéyuán zuòde hěn búcuò. Búguò, yě yǒu liǎngsānge xuéyuán zuòde hěn huài. Fùzé xùnliàn de gānbù shuō, yǐjīng fǎnfùde jiāo tāmen, yào tāmen jīngcháng liànxí, kěshì jìnbùde hěn màn. Yǒude gānbù juéde zhè liǎngsānge xuéyuán bùyinggāi xuéxí fēixíng, yīnggāi xuéxí biéde kēmù. Zǔzhǐ rènwéi tāmen de chéngfèn hǎo, kěyǐ liúxiàlai. Wǒ rènwéi bùyinggāi liúxiàlai. Liúxiàlai jiù shì yīwèizhe làngfèi guójiāde qián. Wǒ yǐjīng bǎ wǒde yìjian xiàng zǔzhǐ tíchūlai le.

Wǒ jiǎnchá kōngjūn xùnliàn de shíhou, búdàn gēn gānbù tánhuà, yě gēn xuéyuán tánhuà. Kànkan yǒu méiyǒu xūyào gǎiliáng de dìfang. Hǎojǐge xuéyuán gēn wǒ shuō tāmen liànxí fēixíng de shíjiān tài shǎo, liànxí yíbiǎo fēixíng de shíjiān yě tài shǎo. Yǒude rén hái shuō zài xiānjīn guójiāde kōngjūn, měiyíge xuéyuán děi liànxí fēixíng yìbǎixiǎoshí cái kěyǐ bìyè; zài zánmende kōngjūn měige

小时；咱们的飞行时间只有先进国家的百分之二十。同志们！这可是一个非常严重的问题。轰炸敌人的阵地，防御敌人的飞机，都是空军的任务。练习飞行的时间不够，就不能掌握飞行的技术。不能掌握飞行技术的空军怎么能消灭敌人，怎么能协同陆军、海军作战？有一个干部告诉我练习飞行的时间少，是因为要省汽油、省钱，准备打仗。他说的话只有一半对。你把汽油跟钱都省下来了，可是驾驶飞机的人质量不好，一定不能防御侵略者，那么省下来的许多汽油、许多钱有什么用呢？

现在讲一讲咱们海军的训练。他们的航海训练搞得很好；各种项目，战士都能掌握。不过也有一、两个年轻的战士还不太会操作特别的仪器。在这方面，担任训

xuéyuán zhǐ liànxí èrshíxiǎoshí;
zánmende fēixíng shíjiān zhǐ yǒu
xiānjìn guójiāde bǎifēnzhìèrshí.
Tóngzhìmen! Zhè kěshì yíge fēicháng
yánzhòngde wèntí. Hōngzhà dírénde
zhèndì, fángyù dírénde fēijī, dōu
shì kōngjūn de rènwù. Liànxí fēixíng
de shíjiān búgòu, jiù bùnéng zhǎngwò
fēixíngde jìshù. Bùnéng zhǎngwò
fēixíng jìshù de kōngjūn zěnme néng
xiāomiè dí rén, zěnme néng xiétóng
lùjūn, hǎijūn zuòzhàn? Yǒu yíge
gànbù gàosu wǒ, liànxí fēixíng de
shíjiān shǎo, shì yīnwei yào shěng
qìyóu, shěng qián, zhǔnbèi dǎzhàng.
Tā shuōde huà zhǐ yǒu yíbàn duì.
Nǐ bǎ qìyóu gēn qián dōu shěngxiàlai
le, kěshì jiàshǐ fēijī de rén zhìliàng
bùhǎo, yíding bùnéng fángyù qīnlüèzhě,
nàme shěngxiàlaide xǔduō qìyóu, xǔduō
qián yǒu shénme yòng ne?

Xiànzài jiǎngyíjiǎng zánmen
hǎijūn de xùnliàn. Tāmende hángǎi
xùnliàn gāode hěn hǎo; gèzhǒng xiàng-
mù, zhànshì dōu néng zhǎngwò. Búguò
yě yǒu yīliǎngge niánqīngde zhànshì
hái bútàihuì cāozuò tèbiéde yíqì.

练的同志应该多用一点儿时间教他们。

鱼雷艇是海军的基干，所以鱼雷艇的指战员都抓偷袭的战术。可是不抓防御敌人偷袭我们的战术。这个，我已经跟干部谈过了，他们下个月就照我的话办，把防御敌人偷袭的战术也包括在内。登陆战也是海军训练的一个主要科目。上个月十四号那天，海军和空军配合陆军演习登陆战，成绩非常好。如果有一天真的打起仗来，咱们的部队登陆是没有问题的。

最后，我要谈谈两件事。第一件是指挥员跟战士的关系，第二件是训练的时候用的器材。咱们先谈第一件。我看百分之九十九的指挥员办事很有积极性，对战士很好。百分之一的指挥员没有干劲，什么事都不作，连干部跟战士的名字都不知道。

Zài zhè fāngmian, dānrèn xùnliàn de tongzhì yīnggāi duō yòng yìdiǎnr shíjiān jiāo tāmen.

Yúléitǐng shì hǎijūnde jīgān, suǒyǐ yúléitǐng de zhǐzhànyuán dōu zhuā tōuxí de zhànshù. Kěshi bùzhuā fāngyù díren tōuxí wǒmen de zhànshù. Zhège, wǒ yǐjīng gēn gānbù tánguòle, tāmen xiàge yuè jiù zhào wǒde huà bàn, bǎ fāngyù díren tōuxí de zhànshù yě bāokuò zài nèi. Dēnglùzhàn yě shì hǎijūn xùnliàn de yíge zhǔyào kēmù. Shàngge yuè shísihào nàtiān, hǎijūn hé kōngjūn pèihé lùjūn yǎnxí dēnglùzhàn, chéngjī fēicháng hǎo. Rúguǒ yǒu yìtiān zhēnde dǎqǐ zhànlay, zánmende bùduì dēnglù shì méiyou wèntí de.

Zuǐhòu, wǒ yào tántan liǎngjiàn shì. Dìyījiàn shì zhǐhuīyuán gēn zhànshì de guānxi, dìèrjiàn shì xùnliàn de shíhou yòngde qìcái. Zánmen xiān tán dìyījiàn. Wǒ kàn bǎifēnzhī-jiǔshíjiǔ de zhǐhuīyuán bànshì hěn yǒu jījíxìng, duì zhànshì hěn hǎo. Bǎifēnzhīyī de zhǐhuīyuán méiyou gānjìn, shénme shì dōu búzuò, lián

这类的指挥员真得改造。

第二件是训练战士的时候用的器材。组织从前说过：训练战士的时候应该用旧的装备。要是旧的不够，可以用新的。在这方面，海军跟空军做得不太好。我看见有的作战部队用的装备太旧了，可是受训的战士都用新的。比方说，有两个海防部队用的高炮都是一九四〇年的，太旧了。有一个海军陆战队的单位现在还用很旧的雷达。为什么指挥员跟干部不听组织的话。这个也是很严重的问题。咱们明天继续开会讨论。

gānbù gēn zhànshì de míngzi dōu
bùzhīdao. Zhè lèi de zhǐhuīyuán
zhēn dēi gǎizào.

Dìèrjiàn shì xùnliàn zhànshì
de shíhou yòngde qìcái. Zǔzhǐ cóng-
qián shuōguo: Xùnliàn zhànshì de
shíhou yīnggāi yòng jiùde zhuāngbèi.
Yàoshi jiùde búgòu, kěyǐ yòng xīnde.
Zài zhè fāngmian, hǎijūn gēn kōngjūn
zuòde bútài hǎo. Wǒ kànjian yǒude
zuòzhàn bùduì yòngde zhuāngbèi tài
jiùle, kěshi shòuxùn de zhànshì dōu
yòng xīnde. Bǐfāng shuō, yǒu liǎngge
hǎifáng bùduì yòngde gāopào dōu shì
yījiūsìlíngnián de, tài jiùle. Yǒu
yíge hǎijūnlùzhànduì de dānwèi
xiànzài hái yòng hěn jiùde léidá.
Wèishénme zhǐhuīyuán gēn gānbù bùtīng
zǔzhǐ de huà. Zhège yě shì hěn
yánzhòngde wèntí. Zánmen míngtiān
jìxù kāihuì tāolùn.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS
for
STORY COMPREHENSION

1. Where did the speaker go last month?
2. What was his mission?
3. What is/are the purpose(s) of this today's meeting?
4. What portion of aviation training was done very well?
5. Why wasn't this portion of training conducted at nighttime?
6. What rhetorical questions did the speaker raise in connection with this portion of training?
7. What remedial actions did the training cadres take when some students did very poorly on firing and bombing?

8. Why did the organization decide to retain those unsatisfactory students?
9. Why did the speaker feel that those students shouldn't be retained?
10. a. In addition to the cadres, who else did the speaker talk to?

b. Why?
11. In the opinion of quite a few students, on which two (2) subjects was too little time spent?
12. In the opinion of some people, what is the practice in the Air Force of advanced nations?
13. In contrast with the advanced nations, what is the practice in the Chinese Air Force?
14. In the speaker's opinion, what are the missions of Air Force?
15. A cadre gave the speaker some justification for spending only a little time on the subject at issue. What was the justification?
16. What subject in naval training did the speaker consider to have been done very well?

17. What problem was there with one or two young servicemen?
18. In the speaker's opinion, what should be done by the comrades in charge of training?
19. What tactic was not stressed by the officers and men of torpedo boats?
20. What happened on the 4th last month?
21. What did the speaker predict about our troops if one of these days war did break out?
22. Finally, what two (2) specific subjects were brought up by the speaker?
23. In the speaker's opinion, how many commanders/officers have great enthusiasm in their work?
24. On the training materials and equipment, what was the instruction given previously by the organization?
25. The speaker cited two, (2) examples to illustrate what he has observed/seen.
 - (a) Describe the first example.
 - (b) Describe the second example.

STORY COMPREHENSION

Answers to Questions

1. Where did the speaker go last month?
(Shāndōng Province)
2. What was his mission?
(inspect Air Force and Navy training situations)
3. What is/are the purpose(s) of this today's meeting?
(1. report to everyone, and 2. discuss how to raise [level of] training)
4. What portion of aviation training was done very well?
(take offs and landings)
5. Why wasn't this portion of training conducted at nighttime?
(because it was dangerous)
6. What rhetorical questions did the speaker raise in connection with this portion of training?
(1. during war, our Air Force don't take off and land at night? and
2. can those afraid of danger defend the fatherland and defend [against] aggressors?)
7. What remedial actions did the training cadres take when some students did very poorly on firing and bombing?
([constant] [frequent] practice)
8. Why did the organization decide to retain those unsatisfactory students?
(they had good social origins)

9. Why did the speaker feel that those students shouldn't be retained?
(it was a waste of national money)

10. a. In addition to the cadres, who else did the speaker talk to?
(the students)

- b. Why?
(to see if anything needed to be improved)

11. In the opinion of quite a few students, on which two (2) subjects was too little time spent?
(flight time and IFR time)

12. In the opinion of some people, what is the practice in the Air Force of advanced nations?
(100 hours flight time before graduation)

13. In contrast with the advanced nations, what is the practice in the Chinese Air Force?
(20 hours flight time)

14. In the speaker's opinion, what are the missions of Air Force?
(1. bomb enemy positions, and 2. defend [against] enemy aircraft)

15. A cadre gave the speaker some justification for spending only a little time on the subject at issue. What was the justification?
(1. save gas, 2. save money, and 3. prepare for war)

16. What subject in naval training did the speaker consider to have been done very well?
(navigation)

17. What problem was there with one or two young servicemen?
(can't operate special instruments too well)

18. In the speaker's opinion, what should be done by the comrades in charge of training?

(use more time to teach them)

19. What tactic was not stressed by the officers and men of torpedo boats?

(tactics of defending against enemy surprise attack)

20. What happened on the 4th last month?

(Navy and Air Force coordinated with Army amphibious landing maneuvers)

21. What did the speaker predict about our troops if one of these days war did break out?

(no problem with amphibious landings)

22. Finally, what two (2) specific subjects were brought up by the speaker?

(1. relationship between commanders and servicemen, and 2. materials and equipment used in training)

23. In the speaker's opinion, how many commanders/officers have great enthusiasm in their work?

(99%)

24. On the training materials and equipment, what was the instruction given previously by the organization?

(use old equipment [use new only if not enough old equipment])

25. The speaker cited two (2) examples to illustrate what he has observed/seen. (a) Describe the first example. (b) Describe the second example.

(a. two Navy units were using 1940-AA guns, [they were too old])

(b. a Marine unit was using a very old radar)

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 海军的训练科目，除了航海以外，还有什么？
Hǎijūn de xùnlìan kēmù, chúle hánghǎi yǐwài, hái yǒu shénme?
2. 中国空军要怎么训练才赶得上先进国家的水平？
Zhōngguó kōngjūn yào zěnme xùnlìan cái gǎndeshàng xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng?
3. 为了掌握飞行训练，新学员一定得学习操作哪些项目？
Wèile zhǎngwò fēixíng xùnlìan, xīn xuéyuán yíding děi xuéxí cāozuò nǎxiē xiàngmù?
4. 听说中国现在新武器和器材还不多，他们怎么样训练学员作战呢？
Tīngshuō Zhōngguó xiànzài xīn wǔqì hé qìcái hái bùduō, tāmen zěnmeyàng xùnlìan xuéyuán zuòzhàn ne?
5. 海军进行登陆战演习的时候，空军怎样配合作战？
Hǎijūn jìnxíng dēnglùzhàn yǎnxíde shíhou, kōngjūn zěnyàng pèihé zuòzhàn?
6. 中国正规军的战术和游击战有什么分别？
Zhōngguó zhèngguījūnde zhànshù hé yóujīzhàn yǒu shénme fēnbié?
7. 为什么中国青年到空军或是海军去服役以后要超期服现役？
Wèishénme Zhōngguó qīngnián dào kōngjūn huòshì hǎijūn qù fúyì yǐhòu yào chāoqī fúxiànyì.

8. 中国空军经常演习实弹射击吗？他们的演习都包括哪些呢？
Zhōngguó kōngjūn jīngcháng yǎnxí shídàn shèjī ma? Tāmende yǎnxí dōu bāokuò nǎxiē ne?
9. 中国目前生产的雷达和航海装备还赶不上先进国家的水平吗？为什么？
Zhōngguó mùqián shēngchǎn de léidá hé hánghǎi zhuāngbèi hái gǎn bù shàng xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng ma? Wèishénme?
10. 陆军入伍训练都用些什么武器？
Lùjūn rùwǔ xùnliàn dōu yòng xiē shénme wǔqì?
11. 请说一说手枪、机枪、炸药包和高射炮在战时有什么用？
Qǐng shuōyishuō shǒuqiāng, jīqiāng, zhànyàobāo hé gāoshèpào zài zhànshí yǒu shénme yòng?
12. 中国空军的干部都是由党员担任吗？为什么？
Zhōngguó kōngjūn de gānbù dōu shì yóu dǎngyuán dānrèn ma? Wèishénme?
13. 一个海军的学员要先学习哪些科目才可以操作鱼雷艇？
Yíge hǎijūn de xuéyuán yào xiān xuéxí nǎxiē kēmù cái kěyǐ cāozuò yúléitǐng?
14. 在飞行训练时期中，为什么夜里的射击和轰炸是经常练习的科目？
Zài fēixíng xùnliàn shíqīzhōng, wèishénme yèlǐde shèjī hé hōngzhà shì jīngcháng liànxí de kēmù?
15. 你能不能说一说登陆战和游击战的分别？
Nǐ néng bùnéng shuōyishuō dēnglùzhàn hé yóujīzhàn de fēnbié?

16. 一个将来要担任操作雷达的空军战士，要不要学习飞行？为什么？
Yíge jiānglái yào dānrèn cāozuò léidá de kōngjūn zhànshì, yào buyào xuéxí fēixíng? Wèishénme?
17. 鱼雷艇用什么来射击敌人？
Yúléitǐng yòng shénme lái shèjī dírén?
18. 新入伍受海军训练的学员要多久才能参加登陆战演习？
Xīn rùwǔ shòu hǎijūn xùnliàn de xuéyuán yào duōjiǔ cái néng cānjiā dēnglùzhàn yǎnxí?
19. 中国和美国目前用的是义务兵役制还是志愿兵役制？那一种比较好？
Zhōngguó hé Měiguó mùqián yòngde shì yìwù bīngyìzhì háishi zhìyuàn bīngyìzhì? Nǎyìzhǒng bǐjiào hǎo?
20. 中国有那些军种的训练是比较有技术性的？为什么？
Zhōngguó yǒu nǎxiē jūnzhǒngde xùnliàn shì bǐjiào yǒu jìshùxìng de? Wèishénme?
21. 鱼雷艇的指战员除了需要学习航海以外，还要学习什么？
Yúléitǐng de zhǐzhànyuán chúle xūyào xuéxí hánghǎi yǐwài, hái yào xuéxí shénme?
22. 中国的空军和海军在挑选学员的时候有什么条件？
Zhōngguó de kōngjūn hé hǎijūn zài tiāoxuǎn xuéyuán de shíhou yǒu shénme tiáojiàn?
23. 抓训练的质量为什么很重要？
Zhuā xùnliàn de zhìliàng wèishénme hěn zhòngyào?

24. 什么是仪表飞行？它对夜里的射击和轰炸有什么帮助？

Shénme shì yíbiǎo fēixíng? Tā duì yèlǐde shèjī hé hōngzhà yǒu shénme bāngzhù?

25. 听说中国鱼雷艇的指战员一定得是中学毕业的同志才可以担任，为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó yúléitǐng de zhǐzhànyuán yíding děi shì zhōngxué bìyède tóngzhì cái kěyǐ dānrèn, wèishénme?

26. 为什么空军除了飞行训练以外还包括雷达跟高炮训练？

Wèishénme kōngjūn chúle fēixíng xùnliàn yǐwài hái bāokuò léidá gēn gāopào xùnliàn?

27. 请说一说下边儿的武器和装备什么部队在战时常常用（到）：(一)步枪、(二)高射炮、(三)鱼雷艇、(四)飞机、(五)坦克。

Qǐng shuōyishuō xiàbianr de wǔqì hé zhuāngbèi shénme bùduì zài zhànshí chángcháng yòng(dào): (1) bùqiāng, (2) gāoshèpào, (3) yúléitǐng, (4) fēijī, (5) tǎnkè.

28. 为什么中国战士认为超期服现役是一件光荣的事？

Wèishénme Zhōngguó zhànshì rènwei chāoqī fúxiànyì shì yíjiàn guāngróng de shì?

29. 请你说一说一个新的海军学员需要学习什么军事科目？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō yíge xīnde hǎijūn xuéyuán xūyào xuéxí shénme jūnshì kēmù?

30. 中国空军在轰炸敌人阵地以前怎么搜集敌人（的）军事目标的情报？

Zhōngguó kōngjūn zài hōngzhà dírén zhèndì yǐqián zěnme sōují dírén(de) jūnshì mùbiāo de qíngbào?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. Aviation and (ocean) navigation are two technical areas where we must emphasize special training, if we are to catch up to the standards of the advanced nations.
2. When landing an airplane here you must use your radar, otherwise you might not be able to see the other planes that are flying.
3. The reconnaissance plane was fired on by enemy antiaircraft artillery killing the pilot and wounding many others.
4. Radar is used on roads to check how fast cars are going; when driving a car you have to pay attention.
5. That pilot said that flying with instruments (IFR) is very difficult, but landing an airplane with instruments is more difficult.

6. During shooting (firing) practice, I didn't hit the target because I failed to take aim.

7. Many kinds of automatic weapons are made in this factory. They also make pistols, rifles, and submachine guns.

8. Our country is not an advanced nation; we use old materials and equipment to train our students.

9. The airplane was flying very high; so high that we couldn't see it, we could only see it if we used radar.

10. The equipment on that torpedo boat is good. There is radar, artillery guns, and machine guns.

11. When navigating on the ocean our torpedo boats use radar; the quality of the equipment is not very good and they sometimes go to the wrong place.

12. In the future, if we don't emphasize quality of equipment and training, we won't be able to catch up with the advanced nations.

MST, Unit 9

13. All our officers and men receive the main training of their branch of service. All of our servicemen learn how to use basic weapons.
14. According to our intelligence reports, the enemy has three times the number of troops that we have; we will have to use surprise attack tactics.
15. The surprise attack was not successful last time because the conditions were not favorable for such tactics.
16. I understand that naval training is very technical; the officers and men have to learn how to operate all kinds of equipment.
17. Tomorrow morning our tanks will make a surprise attack on the enemy fortifications.
18. In addition to learning amphibious warfare tactics, our soldiers have to study surprise attack tactics.
19. The torpedo boat scored many direct hits on the enemy fortifications; many pillboxes were destroyed.

20. It's really not easy to operate this kind of airplane; you have to know how to operate the radar in addition to other instruments.

21. The nomenclature of a rifle is very important if you want to operate it properly. When the sergeant tells you to pull the trigger, you should fire.

22. The airplane flies too fast; we better eat after it lands otherwise we will get sick.

23. We have a serious problem. Our airplane cannot take off because the instruments have developed a malfunction and we can't find anyone to fix it.

24. Our airplanes can fly fast and they can fly high, but the enemy AA guns use radar. I'm afraid they will be able to shoot all of our planes.

25. When we asked him "How were the enemy troops equipped?" He said, "They have recoilless rifles, artillery pieces, and AA guns; however, they don't have any shells."

MST, Unit 9

26. The enemy not only used airplanes to reconnoiter our positions, he also used torpedo boats to reconnoiter the city.

27. When they use airplanes we can easily see them with our radar; torpedo boats are hard to see.

28. That soldier said the enemy artillery units' training is unusually good, and their aiming is really accurate.

29. During the battle, one artillery shell landed near our bunker but it did not explode. After the attack we moved to another pillbox.

30. The enemy surprise attack was not successful because, even though the enemy airplanes were flying very low, we could still see them with our radar.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Tīngshuō zài hǎijūn shòuxùn de xuésheng jīngcháng yào xuéxí cāozuò hé bǎoyǎng léidá, yíbiǎo dēngdēng fùzá de yíqì.
2. Bùxǐhuan Zhōngguó de rén chángcháng shuō, Zhōngguó dào xiànzài hái méiyǒu gāopào bùduì, bīngqiě lùjūn de bùqiāng yě búgòu yòng. Zhè dōushi yáoyán.
3. Kào yíbiǎo fēixíng de fēijī, qǐfēi hé jiàngluò dōu búshòu huài tiānqì de yǐngxiǎng, wúlùn tiānqì zěnmeyàng dōu kényī zuòzhàn.
4. Wèile fángyù dìguózhǔyì qīnlüèzhě, Zhōngguó kāishǐ zhuā yúléitǐng de shēngchǎn yǐjīng yǒule hěn hǎode chéngjī.
5. Cóngqián Yīngguó huòshi Rìběn qīnlüè Zhōngguó de shíhou, dōushi zài Zhōngguó dōngbianr de hǎiàn dēnglù.
6. Jùshuō Zhōngguó cóng Yíjiǔqīlíngnián yǐhòu kāishǐ kuòdà hǎijūn lùzhànduì, xiànzài rényuán hé zhuāngbèi yǐjīng bǐ cóngqián zēngjiāle xǔduō.
7. Fùzérén gàosu cānjiā shídàn shèjì de zhànshìmen shuō: "Zhǐyǒu bǎifēnzhī-bǎi de dǎzhōng mùbiāo cái suànshì hǎo chéngjī!"

8. Rēng shǒuliúdàn yěshi xūyào jìshude. Méiyóu shòuguó xùnliàn de shìbǐng búshì bǎ shǒuliúdàn rēngde tài gāo, jiùshì tài dī, jiéguǒ dōu rēng bùyuǎn. Zhǐyǒu rēngde bùgāo yě bùdī, shǒu yǒu yǒu lìliang cái néng rēngde yuǎn.

9. Xiānjìn guójiā xùnliàn zhànshì fēixíng, chúle jiāo tāmen xuéxí fēijī gè bùjiānde míngchēng yǐwài, zuìshǎo děi fēixíng yībǎi èrshíge xiǎoshí cái néng bìyè.

10. Rúguǒ díjūn pèihé tǎnkè hé huǒpào dēnglù, wǒmende zhǐzhànyuán hěn róngyi bèi shāshāng. Suóyì yídìng yào gòuzhù jiāngùde gōngshì.

11. Zhōngguóde wǔqì hái hěn luòhòu, dǎngzhōngyāng juédìng zhuā shēngchǎnde zhìliàng, dǎsuàn zài gōngyuán èrqiānnián yǐqián gǎnshang xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng.

12. Yībānde shuō, hǎijūn lùzhànduì bùnéng zìjǐ dǎzhàng, tā xūyào qítāde jūnzhǒng hé bǐngzhǒng lái xiétóng zuǒzhàn.

13. Xiǎo Wáng hěn xǐhuan dāng hǎijūn. Tāde shòuxùn chéngjǐ hěn hǎo, kěshì shēntǐ búshìhé zài chuánshang gōngzuò, zǔzhǐ zhǐhǎo pài tā dào lùjūn qù fú bìngyì.

14. Shìbǐng zài hǎijūn cāozuò de yíqì dōushi yǒu jìshùxìng de, suóyì tāmen tuīwǔ yǐhòu, hěn róngyi zhǎodào gōngzuò.

15. Zhōngguó jiěfàngjūn de jūnzhǒng bāokuò hǎijūn, kōngjūn hé lùjūn, cíwài háiyǒu wǔzhuāng mínbǐng, jīgān mínbǐng hé putōng mínbǐng dēngděng bǐngzhǒng.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate" because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 9

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

A. Comrade Zhāng Bǎohán is discussing the PRCN with Captain Haskins, an instructor at the U.S. Naval Academy.

1. H: As an American Navy officer, I'm really interested in the Chinese Navy. What is the personnel strength of the Chinese Navy?

Z: 中国海军的指战员有二十五万人左右。这些人员包括了所有正在受训的新兵，学校的学员跟少数的航空人员。

Zhōngguó hǎijūn de zhǐzhànyuán yǒu èrshiwūwànrén zuǒyòu. Zhèxiē rényuán bāokuòle suǒyǒu zhèngzài shòuxùn de xīnbīng, xuéxiàode xuéyuán gēn shǎoshùde hángkōng rényuán.

2. H: How are new conscripts assigned to the Navy?

Z: 新兵分派到海军去是根据海军实际上的需要来挑选。一般来说，家庭成分好，体格检查又合格的新兵都有机会到海军去服役。

Xīnbīng fēnpài dào hǎijūn qù shì gēnjù hǎijūn shíjìshàngde xūyào lái tiāoxuǎn. Yībānláishuō, jiātíng chéngfèn hǎo, tǐgé jiǎnchá yòu hégé de xīnbīng dōu yǒujiù dào hǎijūn qù fúyì.

3. H: I've heard that Navy conscripts serve for a longer period of time than those in the Army. Is that true?

Z: 是真的。到海军去的新兵得服四年兵役。这是因为海军训练的时间比陆军长，此外，因为需要在船上服役，所以他们的薪水也多一点。中国的年轻人都认为能在祖国的海军服役是一件非常光荣的事情。

Shì zhēnde. Dào hǎijūn qùde xīnbīng děi fú sìnián bīngyì. Zhè shì yīnwèi hǎijūn xùnliàn de shíjiān bǐ lùjūn cháng, cǐwài, yīnwèi xūyào zài chuánshàng fúyì, suǒyǐ tāmen de xīnshuǐ yě duō yìdiǎnr. Zhōngguóde niánqīngrén dōu rènwéi néng zài zǔguóde hǎijūn fúyì shì yíjiàn fēicháng guāngróng de shìqing.

4. H: What about training in the Chinese Navy?

Z: 新中国成立不久, 就开始了整个儿的训练海军干部和战士的计划。现在已经有好几个海军学校, 中间最有名的是“第一海军学校。”很多海军作战单位的负责人和干部都是从这个学校毕业的。

Xīn Zhōngguó chénglì bùjiǔ, jiù kāishǐle zhěnggè de xùnliàn hǎijūn gānbù hé zhànshì de jìhuà. Xiànzài yǐjīng yǒu hǎojǐge hǎijūn xuéxiào, zhōngjiān zuì yǒumíngde shì "Dìyī Hǎijūn Xuéxiào." Hěnduō hǎijūn zuòzhàn dānwèi de fùzérén hé gānbù dōushì cóng zhège xuéxiào bìyè de.

5. H: I already know that the fighters are about the same as enlisted men in the United States Navy. What is their training like?

Z: 刚入伍的新兵都得受几个星期的基本训练。在这段受训时期中, 组织就挑选将来派到不同兵种去服役的人。被挑到海军去的新兵, 受完了海军的特别训练, 就成了一个能保卫祖国的海军战士了。

Gāng rùwǔ de xīnbīng dōu dēi shòu jǐge xīngqī de jīběn xùnliàn. Zài zhèduàn shòuxùn shíqīzhōng, zǔzhī jiù tiāoxuǎn jiānglái pàidào bùtóng bīngzhǒng qù fúyì de rén. Bèi tiāo dào hǎijūn qù de xīnbīng, shòuwánle hǎijūn de tèbié xùnliàn, jiù chéngle yíge néng bǎowèi zǔguó de hǎijūn zhànshì le.

6. H: Do they continue on with the regular military basic training or do they receive special training?

Z: 从海军学校毕业出来的学员, 组织再分派他们到不同的单位去。比方说, 有的战士去技术学校, 有的上船去学习或是留在海军学校帮助干部训练新兵。

Cóng hǎijūn xuéxiào bìyèchūlai de xuéyuán, zǔzhī zài fēnpài tāmen dào bùtóngde dānwèi qù. Bǐfāngshuō, yǒude zhànshì qù jìshù xuéxiào, yǒude shàng chuán qù xuéxí huòshì liúzài hǎijūn xuéxiào bāngzhù gānbù xùnliàn xīnbīng.

7. H: How long does this phase of training last?

Z: 训练时间的长短没有一定, 主要得看学员的学习能力跟有关系的单位需要不需要人来决定。

Xùnliàn shíjiān de chángduǎn méiyǒu yíding, zhǔyào dēi kàn xuéyuán de xuéxí nénglì gēn yǒuguānxi de dānwèi xūyào bùxūyào rén lái juédìng.

8. H: Does political training continue throughout this training program?

Z: 对。战士在整个儿的服役时期都不停地接受政治训练。因为党的政策是政治教育是军事训练非常重要的一部分。

Duì. Zhànshì zài zhěnggèrde fúyì shíqī dōu bùtíngde jiēshòu zhèngzhì xùnlìan. Yīnwèi dǎngde zhèngcè shì zhèngzhì jiàoyù shì jūnshì xùnlìan fēicháng zhōngyàode yībùfen.

9. H: You mentioned the First Naval School. This is one place where you said that Navy cadre are trained, and I would like to know that they learn there.

Z: “第一海军学校”跟别的海军学校一样，都是训练海军干部的机构。学员应该学的科目很多。不过，最重要的是关于航海和登陆战方面的科目。

"Dìyī hǎijūn xuéxiào" gēn biéde hǎijūn xuéxiào yíyàng dōu shì xùnlìan hǎijūn gānbù de jīgòu. Xuéyuán yīnggāi xuéde kēmù hěnduō. Búguò, zuì zhōngyàode shì guānyú hánghǎi hé dēnglùzhàn fāngmian de kēmù.

10. H: Are any fighters familiar with these subjects?

Z: 当然啦，海军战士一定得个个懂航海，并且熟悉武器的操作。不但是这样，派到鱼雷艇上服役的指战员都得学会无论是白天或是夜里都能偷袭敌人的战术。

Dāngrán la, hǎijūn zhànshì yídìng děi gègè dǒng hánghǎi, bìngqiě shúxī wǔqì de cāozuò. Pàidào shì zhèyàng, pàidào yúléitǐngshàng fúyì de zhǐzhànyuán dōu děi xuéhuì wúlùn shì báitiān huòshì yèli dōu néng tōuxí dírén de zhànshù.

11. H: Very interesting. Do your trainees learn on new equipment?

Z: 这个我们目前还办不到。新兵只能使用旧的武器和装备。新的武器和装备留着打仗的时候才用。原因是我们武器的生产还不够用，并且生产的质量也赶不上先进国家的水平，这是我们的重大问题。

Zhège wǒmen mùqián hái bànbudào. Xīnbīng zhǐnéng shǐyòng jiùde wǔqì hé zhuāngbèi. Xīnde wǔqì hé zhuāngbèi liúzhè dǎzhàng de shíhou cái yòng. Yuányīn shì wǒmen wǔqìde shēngchǎn hái búgòu yòng, bìngqiě shēngchǎn de zhīliàng yě gǎnbushàng xiānjīn guójiā de shuǐpíng, zhè shì wǒmen de dà wèntí.

12. H: Do fighters learn to shoot antiaircraft guns?

Z: 高射炮射击也是战士一定得学习的科目。有的战士并且接受雷达操作的特别训练来配合高射炮射击敌人的飞机。

Gāoshèpào shèjī yěshì zhànshì yíding děi xuéxí de kēmù. Yǒude zhànshì bìngqiě jiēshòu léidá cāozuò de tèbié xùnlìan lái pèihé gāoshèpào shèjī dīfēnde fēiji.

13. H: Does the Chinese Navy have a lot of new ships?

Z: 同我刚才说的一样，我们的舰艇大多数都很旧了。新的很少。不过这些旧的舰艇因为保养得好，性能都不错。我们的造船工厂正在积极生产军舰。不久的将来，中国的海军会有很多新型的舰艇参加保卫祖国的工作了。

Tóng wǒ gāngcái shuōde yíyàng, wǒmende jiàntǐng dàduōshù dōu hěn jiùle. Xīnde hěn shǎo, búguò zhèxiē jiùde jiàntǐng yīnwèi bǎoyǎng de hǎo, xìngnéng dōu búcuò. Wǒmende zàochuán gōngchǎng zhèngzài jījí shēngchǎn jūnjiàn. Bùjiǔ de jiānglái, Zhōngguóde hǎijūn huì yǒu hěnduō xīnxíngde jiàntǐng cānjiā bǎowèi zǔguó de gōngzuò le.

14. H: Does your Navy also have an air force?

Z: 有。我们海军有航空兵。事实上，海军航空兵过去在支援海军作战方面已经作出了很大的贡献。

Yǒu. Wǒmende hǎijūn yǒu hángkōngbīng. Shìshíshàng, hǎijūn hángkōngbīng guòqù zài zhīyuán hǎijūn zuòzhàn fāngmiàn yǐjīng zuòchūle hěn dàde gòngxiàn.

15. H: Do you have amphibious warfare capabilities?

Z: 有。我们的登陆作战部队跟美国的一样都是海军的一部分，打仗的时候非常有用。

Yǒu. Wǒmende dēnglù zuòzhàn bùduì gēn Měiguóde yíyàng dōushi hǎijūn de yībùfen, dǎzhàng de shíhou fēicháng yǒu yòng.

16. H: Thank you for talking to me about the Chinese Navy.

Z: 别客气。我是很愿意跟你谈一谈的。再见。

Bié kèqi. Wǒ shì hěn yuànyì gēn nǐ tányitán de. Zàijiàn.

UNIT 9

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

B. Comrade Lǐ Guó Fēng is discussing Chinese Air Force training with Colonel Wamsley of the USAF Academy.

1. W: What is the current personnel strength of the PRCAF?

L: 中国空军的指战员大概有十七万人左右。实际上驾驶飞机的空军人员只有一万人。

Zhōngguó kōngjūn de zhǐzhànyuán dàgài yǒu shíqīwàn rén zuǒyòu. Shíjìshàng jiàoshǐ fēijī de kōngjūn rényuán zhǐ yǒu yīwàn rén.

2. W: How are personnel assigned to the PRCAF?

L: 空军每年从入伍受训的新兵里边儿挑选合格的人去服役。在挑选的时候空军特别注重那些入伍以前已经懂机械的人。到空军去的人得服四年兵役。

Kōngjūn měinián cóng rùwǔ shòuxùn de xīnbīng lǐbianr tiāoxuǎn hégé de rén qù fúyì. Zài tiāoxuǎn de shíhou kōngjūn tèbié zhùzhòng nàxiē rùwǔ yǐqián yǐjīng dǒng jīxiè de rén. Dào kōngjūn qù de rén dēi fú sìnián bīngyì.

3. W: How long is the pilot training program for the PRCAF?

L: 一般来说飞行训练分成初级、中级跟高级三个时期。整个儿的训练需要两年的时间。

Yìbānláishuō fēixíng xùnliàn fēnchéng chūjí, zhōngjí gēn gāojí sāngē shíqī. Zhěnggèr de xùnliàn xūyào liǎngnián de shíjiān.

4. W: What is included in the primary phase, and about how long does it last?

L: 初级飞行训练需要六个月。训练的项目包括基本飞行、气象、政治学习等等。

Chūjí fēixíng xùnliàn xūyào liùge yuè. Xùnliàn de xiàngmù bāokuò jīběn fēixíng, qìxiàng, zhèngzhì xuéxí dēngdēng.

5. W: How about the second phase?

L: 中级飞行训练需要九个月，比初级的时间长。开始的时候，先练习白天飞行，除了正常的天气飞行以外，特别注重学员在复杂的气候里飞行的技术。这种训练合格以后，接着再学习夜里飞行跟演习夜里轰炸和射击等等科目。

Zhōngjí fēixíng xùnliàn xūyào jiǔge yuè, bǐ chūjíde shíjiān cháng. Kāishǐ de shíhòu, xiān liànxí báitiān fēixíng, chúle zhèngchángde tiānqì fēixíng yǐwài, tèbié zhùzhòng xuéyuán zài fùzáde qìhòulǐ fēixíng de jìshù. Zhèzhǒng xùnliàn hégé yǐhòu, jiēzhe zài xuéxí yèlǐ fēixíng gēn yǎnxí yèlǐ hōngzhà hé shèjǐ dēngdēng kēmù.

6. W: I suppose that the advanced phase includes flying in formation and air maneuvers, right?

L: 对了。此外，高级飞行训练还包括学习怎么检查和修理仪表。一共也要用九个月的时间才能毕业。

Duìle. Cǐwài, gāojí fēixíng xùnliàn hái bāokuò xuéxí zěnmē jiǎnchá hé xiūlǐ yíbiǎo. Yígòng yě yào yòng jiǔge yuè de shíjiān cái néng bìyè.

7. W: That's pretty thorough training.

L: 一点儿也不错。不但是这样儿，连发射高射炮和操作雷达也是他们训练的一部分。

Yídiǎnr yě búcuò. Búdàn shì zhèyàngr, lián fāshè gāoshèpào hé cāozuò léidá yě shì tāmen xùnliàn de yíbfēn.

8. W: When the pilots have finished training, what happens?

L: 飞行训练毕业了学员，组织就根据他们学习的成绩分派到不同的飞行单位去服役。

Fēixíng xùnliàn bìyèle de xuéyuán, zǔzhǐ jiù gēnjù tāmen xuéxí de chéngjī fēnpài dào bùtóngde fēixíng dānwèi qù fúyì.

9. W: When they join a regular unit, do they get much flying time?

L: 是的。他们到了服役的单位以后还要不断的作飞行训练，并且有的时候配合海军和陆军作大规模的军事演习。不过，我们的空军各型飞机的性能跟先进国家的飞机比，还有一段差距，所以只能用现在有的飞机和装备来尽量地学习作战技术。

Shìde. Tāmen dào le fúyì de dānwèi yǐhòu hái yào búduàn de zuò fēixíng xùnliàn, bìngqiě yǒude shíhou pèihé hǎijūn hé lùjūn zuò dàguīmó de jūnshì yǎnxí. Búguò, wǒmende kōngjūn gèxíng fēijī de xìngnéng gēn xiānjìn guójiā de fēijī bǐ, hái yǒu yíduàn chājù, suǒyì zhǐnéng yòng xiānzài yǒude fēijī hé zhuāngbèi lái jīnliàng de xuéxí zuòzhàn jìshù.

10. W: Approximately how many aircraft does the Chinese Air Force have?

L: 如果把所有的飞机，不论是大的、小的、新的、旧的加起来，大概有四千一百架左右。我们目前旧的飞机还是占大多数。不过，四人帮以后，党中央已经决定积极生产各种新型的飞机，特别是战斗机。将来在速度跟火炮装备上可以赶得上先进国家的水平。这样一来就可以有效地保卫祖国了。

Rúguǒ bǎ suǒyǒude fēijī búlùn shì dàde, xiǎode, xīnde, jiùde jiāqǐlái, dàgài yǒu sìqiānyībǎijià zuǒyòu. Wǒmen mùqián jiùde fēijī hái shì zhàn dàduōshù. Búguò, Sīrénbāng yǐhòu, Dǎngzhōngyāng yǐjīng juéding jījī shēngchǎn gèzhǒng xīnxíngde fēijī, tèbié shì zhàndòujī. Jiānglái zài sùdù gēn huǒpào zhuāngbèishàng kényī gǎndeshàng xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng. Zhèyàngyǐlái jiù kényī yǒuxiǎode bǎowèi zǔguó le.

11. W: What about Air Force personnel who are not pilots? What kind of jobs are they trained for, and how long does it take to train them?

L: 不参加飞行的空军人员也要受各种不同的技术训练。训练的长短就得看他学的是那一种技术；比方说，学习修理飞机引擎的比学习管理零件补给用的时间长得多。不过整个儿来说，每一种训练对空军作战都是非常重要的。

Bùcānjiā fēixíng de kōngjūn rényuán yě yào shòu gèzhǒng bùtóngde jìshù xùnliàn. Xùnliàn de chángduǎn jiù děi kàn tā xuéde shì nǎ yìzhǒng jìshù; bǐfāngshuō, xuéxí xiūlǐ fēijī yǐnqíngde bǐ xuéxí guǎnlǐ língjiàn bǔjǐ yòngde shíjiān chángde duō. Búguò zhěngger lái shuō, měi yìzhǒng xùnliàn duì kōngjūn zuòzhàn dōu shì fēicháng zhòngyào de.

12. W: Well, thank you for talking to me about the Chinese Air Force. I've really enjoyed this.

L: 不必客气，我觉得跟你谈谈很有意思。再见。

Búbì kèqì. Wǒ juéde gēn nǐ tántan hě yǒu yìsi. Zàijiàn.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Three PLA officers are discussing an attack on an enemy position located on the seacoast.

Role 1: Major Fang is the commander of the amphibious landing forces. His major concern is that his landing boats will be discovered by the enemy reconnaissance positions of the coastal defense units, making a surprise attack impossible. He could assign his forces/units to land at night, but then they could be discovered by the enemy radar positions. Navigation at night or when foggy is no problem, as their navigation instruments are all very dependable. He feels that they need covering fire from the artillery pieces on the ships/boats.

Role 2: Major Song is the Marine commander involved in the landing. He feels that he can land small units before daylight to make a surprise attack on the enemy radar positions and destroy them, and then land the major attack force at sunrise. The first landing assault unit will include soldiers and tanks; the second AA guns, soldiers and tanks, ammunition, and construction equipment; and the third landing unit will include soldiers and technical equipment. Each successive landing unit (after the first one) will take about 15 minutes between landings. It is Song's opinion that the first landing assault unit should attack toward the enemy positions as soon as they land, with the second landing attack unit defending the landing area.

Role 3: Comrade Zhang is the commander of all forces. He wants all boats to move to their attack positions by midnight (if possible). The Marines may attack the enemy radar positions only if they can land unobserved and make a surprise attack on the enemy positions. The ship's artillery pieces will cover the main landing force and harass the enemy positions. Landing Unit No.1 will attack the enemy forces near the landing area, and then defend that area until the third attack landing force has landed. Otherwise, the ammunition and equipment may not be able to catch up with the forward attack units. Until the first landing assault force has landed, Major Fang will be in command. After the first landing force has landed, then Major Song will be in command.

Scenario 2

Situation: Three officials have met to discuss the technical problems facing modernization of the PLA forces.

Role 1: Major Wu is the representative of the PLA Air Force. He feels that the PRC-produced aviation (flight) instruments are fairly good, and that they can continue to be produced within the PRC; but they must immediately begin research to raise the quality of the (flight) instruments currently used. The radar equipment currently being used by the Air Force is all too old, and there is not enough to provide effective coastal defense against enemy aircraft. Beginning new research into radar and radar equipment will not work, as 5000 new radars are needed before the end of the year. Although it may lead to problems of an economic or political nature, Wu feels that new radar equipment should be bought from some of the more advanced nations.

Role 2: Comrade Jiang is the representative of the PRC Navy. His major concern is that his torpedo boats are all too old and too slow to be useful. In addition, the radar that they use is totally ineffective and their navigational instruments are only effective during good weather. Jiang thinks that at least 100 new torpedo boats must be purchased from one of the advanced nations as soon as possible. He is also concerned about the ability of the naval coastal defense units to defend against enemy amphibious landings.

Role 3: Comrade Sun is the "organization" representative who must make the final decision as to weapons and equipment. As much equipment as possible should be produced within the PRC for political reasons. Additional anti-tank guns and anti-aircraft guns can be easily manufactured to strengthen coastal defense, and torpedo boats can also be locally produced. But the quality of the PRC-produced radar equipment and navigational equipment is still very poor. It is possible that the needed equipment can be purchased from foreign countries, but Sun feels a better solution would be to coordinate with advanced nations to help the PRC build new factories and send students to those countries to study the newest manufacturing/production techniques. It would also be possible to invite foreign technicians to the PRC to instruct the Chinese laborers in the newer techniques; however, it would probably take over two years before the first new radars could be produced.

Scenario 3

Situation: Three PLA representatives have met to discuss the defensive abilities and needs in the HaiNan Dao (Island) area.

Role 1: Major Zhao is the representative of the PLA Air Force responsible for the defense of the HaiNan Dao area. At present, there are 1400 anti-aircraft guns on the island, of which 900 are located near towns and military airports. The other 500 are located near the ocean, and are totally coordinated with the Marine coastal defense units. Of the 1400 anti-aircraft guns on the island, approximately 65% use radar for aiming, and have been shown to be very effective against enemy airplanes. By the end of the month, another 10% should have radar equipment to be used for aiming, but more technicians are needed as most of the problems with the new equipment has been technical in nature.

Role 2: Comrade Mao is the representative of the PLA Navy units responsible for the defense of HaiNan Dao. He currently has 150 torpedo boats assigned for patrolling, but 25 of these have problems of a technical nature, and it will take at least a month to eliminate the problems. Though all of the torpedo boats have navigation equipment, only 30 have radar equipment; so usually each patrol consists of one radar-torpedo boat and four-five torpedo boats which are not equipped with radar. The torpedo boats which are not equipped with radar are useless against enemy sneak attack or night landings. The Navy has no way to defend against enemy amphibious landings, and must depend upon the Marine and militia coastal defense units already on the island.

Role 3: Comrade Yang is responsible for all military units on the island. His primary concern is enemy sneak attack or nighttime amphibious landings. He feels that the Navy should coordinate with coastal defense units in order to construct more man-made terrain features to be used in defending against enemy landings, and that the torpedo boats should patrol at least 15 miles from HaiNan Dao. Some (if not all) of the torpedo boats which do not have radar should not go further than one-two miles from the island, and should be used to defend against enemy amphibious landings. The Air Force should assign at least 200 airplanes for patrolling and collecting intelligence information. Since most of the problems of defense (equipment) are so technical in nature, everyone should stress the daily inspection of equipment and materials as well as the quality of student training and military defense exercises.

VOCABULARY

PART 1

B

		Unit
bǎiwàn	million	2
bānjī	trigger	7
bàodào	to report (for a newcomer to one's organization, meeting, etc. for duty)	1
bāokuò	to include	6
bāokuò zài nèi	to be included (within)	8
bàopò	to blow up, to explode	8
bǎowèi	to defend	3
biānfáng	border (frontier) defense	4
bǐfang shuō	for example, for instance	2
bīng	servicemen, soldier	3
bìngbù(-)/bìngméi	definitely not, by no means, really not, certainly not	6
bīngzhǒng	arm of service (i.e., infantry, artillery etc.)	1
bǐrúshuō	for example, for instance	8
bùjiàn	parts (of a machine, weapon, etc.)	7
bùqiāng	rifle (C: zhī)	5
<u>C</u>		
cánfèide	to be disabled	2
cānjūn	to join the Army/Armed Forces	1
cāoliàn	to drill, drills	6
cāozuò	to operate (a machine, weapon, etc.)	7
cháng	to be long	1
chāoqǐ fú xiànyì	to serve (beyond the term)	3

chéngfèn	ingredients, social origin (PRC)	2
cìdāo	bayonet	6
cìshā	(the skill of killing) with a bayonet	6
cǐwài	besides, in addition	9
<u>D</u>		
dǎde zhǔn(què)	to hit accurately	7
dǎhuài	to destroy (by striking or with a weapon)	7
dǎjī	to attack; a blow (figurative)	3
dāng	to be, to become (in the sense of serving as...)	3
dǎngyuán	(Party) member	5
dànyào	ammunition	5
dǎsǐ	to kill, to be killed	7
dǎ yóujīzhàn	to fight guerrilla warfare	6
dǎzhàng	to fight (a war)	6
dǎzhòng	to score a hit	7
(rúguǒ) (yàoshi)	} ...de huà if...	3
děngděng	etc.	2
dēnglù	to land (amphibiously)	9
dēnglùzhàn	amphibious warfare	9
dìguózhǔyì	imperialism	4
dírén	enemy	5
dìwù	surface feature (usually man-made features in a region)	8
dòngzuò	(bodily) movements	6
dōu...xiē shénme	all	6

F

fǎndào	on the contrary	2
fǎndòngpài	reactionaries	6
fǎnfù(de)	repeatedly	7
fǎngémìngfènzǐ	counterrevolutionary element	2
fángyù	defense; to defend against	4
fǎntǎnkèpào	antitank gun (C:mén)	5
fāshè	to shoot, to fire (a weapon)	7
fēixíng	aviation; to fly	9
fēnchéng	to divide/classify into; to be divided/ classified into	4
fēnpài	to assign	1
fènzǐ	element	2
fǒuzé	otherwise	8
fúyì qīmǎn	term of (military) service expires	3
fùyuan	to "demobilize"	3
fùyuan jūnrén	veteran, ex-serviceman	3

G

gǎizào	to reform	2
gǎndeshàng	to be able to catch up with	9
gāopào	AA gun (C: mén)	9
gāoshèpào	antiaircraft gun (C: mén)	5
gōngān	public security	4
gōngshì	fortification	8
gòu yòng	enough (for use)	5
gòuzào	structure, construction	7
gòuzhù	to construct (military)	8

guāngróng	glory, honor; be glorious	1
gùzhàng	malfunction	8

H

hǎijūnlùzhānduì	Marine Corps	9
hǎifáng	coastal defense	4
hánghǎi	navigation (ocean)	9
hǎojǐ-	quite a few	4
hǎotīng	to be good to listen to	1
hégé	to pass, to be up to the standard	2
hōngzhà	to bomb (by airplane)	6
huàichù	disadvantage, bad point	2
huàifènzǐ	bad element, evildoer	4
huǎnyì	deferment; to be deferred (military service)	2
huǒpào	artillery piece (C: mèn)	7

J

jiǎnchá tǐgé	to give a physical examination; to have a physical examination	2
jiàndié	spy	5
jiànglù	to land (aircraft or paratrooper)	9
jiànshè	to build, to construct; construction	4
jiāotōngháo	communication trench	8
jiàoshǐ	to drive, to operate (a vehicle or airplane)	8
jīběn xùnliàn	basic training	1
jiējí dírén	class enemy	3
jīgàn	backbone, primary, basic (for people or organization)	4
jījífènzǐ	activist, enthusiast	5

jīnéng	skill	3
jīngcháng(de)	constantly	7
jìngōng	to attack, to assault; attack (mil.)	8
jīqiāng	machine gun (C: tǐng)	5
jiùshi...yě	even if	2
jūnduì	armed forces, troops	3
jūnzhǒng	branch (of Armed Forces)	1

K

kě búshi ma!	It certainly is!	5
kěkào	to be reliable, to be trustworthy	5
kēmù	subjects (in learning or studies) (C: ge)	7
kòu	to pull (trigger)	7

L

làngfèi	to waste	6
lèi	category, kind, type	4
léidá	radar	9
liànxí	to practice (for gaining experience)	6
lìwài	exception; to be make an exception	2
lìyì	interest, benefit	4
lìyòng	to make use of, to utilize, to use	8
lìzhèng	"Attention!"; to stand at attention	6

M

mǎnle	to have reached (a time limit)	2
miǎnyì	exemption; to be exempted (from military service)	2
miáozhǔn	to aim (accurately)	7
mìmi	secret; to be secret; secretly	5

mínbīng	militia, militiaman	3
míngchēng	nomenclature, name (of an object or an organization)	7
mùbiāo	target	7
<u>P</u>		
páichú	to overcome, to exclude (<u>páichú</u> is interpreted as "to repair" or "to eliminate" when it is used in conjunction with <u>gùzhàng</u> "malfunction")	8
pàodàn	(artillery) shell (C: fā)	7
páoqù	to subtract, to exclude (in figuring or calculating)	2
pèihé	to coordinate	4
píngshí	time of peace, in time of peace, peacetime	4
pínnóng	poor peasant	5
pínxiàzhōngnóng	poor & lower-middle-class peasant	5
<u>Q</u>		
qiànháo	trench (mil.)	8
-qiānwàn	"ten million"	4
qìcái	materials and equipment	9
qíngbào	intelligence information(data)	5
qīngnián	young people	3
qǐngqiú	to request; request	3
qīnlüèzhě	aggressor	4
qìxiàng	meteorology	4
quánlì	right (as opposed to obligation)	2
<u>R</u>		
rǎoluàn	to harass (mil.), to disturb	5
rēng	to throw, to cast	6

rènwù	mission, duty	5
rùwǔ	to enter military service	1
<u>S</u>		
sànbīngkēng	foxhole	8
shàng cìdāo	to fix bayonet(s)	6
shāoxī	"At ease!"; to stand at ease	6
shāshāng	to kill or wound	7
shāsǐ	to kill	6
shèjī	to fire, to shoot; shooting	6
shèngxia	to leave (as balance of remainder)	2
shēntǐ	body, health	2
shì a!	yes, indeed	4
shídan shèjī	live-ammunition shooting; to shoot with live ammunition (live fire)	7
shǒuliúdàn	hand grenade	6
shǒuqiāng	pistol (C: zhī)	5
shòuwán	to finish (receiving training)	1
shòu xùn	to receive or undergo training	1
shòu xùnliàn	to receive or undergo training	1
shuǐpíng	standard	3
sǐ	to die	7
sōují	to collect	5
<u>T</u>		
tǎnkè	tank (military) (C: liàng)	8
táobì	to shirk, to dodge, to evade	2
tèbié(de)	to be special	3
tiáojiàn	conditions, terms, requirements	3

tiāo(xuǎn)	to select, to choose	4
tǐgē jiǎnchá	physical examination	2
tōngzhī	notice; to notify	1
tóudàn	to throw hand grenades, to drop bombs, to bomb	6
tōuxí	surprise attack, to raid (mil.), to make a surprise attack	9
tuīwǔ	to be discharged (from mil. service)	3
<u>W</u>		
wéiyíde	only	2
wùhuì	misunderstanding	4
wúlùn...yě	regardless of, no matter what/how/etc.	
wǔqì	weapon	5
wǔzhuāng	to arm; to be armed; arms	4
wǔzhuāng qiúdù	to swim across fully armed, to swim across with one's weapon	8
wúzuòlìpào	recoilless rifle (C: mén)	7
<u>X</u>		
xiàngmù	item	9
xiānjìn guójiā	advanced nation	9
xiànyì	active duty	3
xiàzhōngnóng	lower-middle-class peasant	5
xiétóng	to cooperate with, to work in coordination with	4
xìn	to believe; to believe in	3
xǔ	to allow, to permit; to be allowed, to be permitted	1
xuéyuán	student (in a institute or class for special jet training)	9
xǔkě	permission	1

xùnliàn	training; to train	1
xúnluó	to go on patrol; patrol	4
<u>Y</u>		
yǎntǐ	emplacement, pillbox, dugout	8
yǎnxí	(military) exercise, (military) maneuver, to conduct (military) exercise, to conduct (military) maneuver	8
yào	should	6
yáoyán	rumor	3
yībānde shuō	generally speaking	3
yíbiǎo	instrument (science and technology)	9
yíbiǎo fēixíng	instrument flying; to fly by Instrument Flight Rules (IFR)	9
yìfāngmiàn... (lìng) yìfāngmiàn...	on one hand... on the other hand...	3
yǐnbì	to take cover, to conceal	8
yíqì	instrument (science & technology) (Army and Navy) (in general)	9
yǐwéi	to think, to take it for granted, to presume	6
yìwèizhe	to mean, to imply, to signify	6
yìwù	obligation	1
yìwù bīngyìzhì	compulsory military service system	1
yóu	by	1
yóujīduì	guerrillas, partisans	6
yǒu jìshùxìngde	to be technical	9
yóujìzhàn	guerrilla warfare	5
(yǒu)...xìngde	of a ... nature	9
yuányīn	cause, reason, grounds	2

yùbèiyì	reserve duty	3
yúléitǐng	torpedo boat(s) (C: sōu)	9
<u>Z</u>		
zài...qíngkuāngxia	under...circumstance	8
zào yáo(yán)	to start a rumor	3
zhǎngwò	to gain control of, to master	6
zhànshì	fighter (mil.)	7
zhànshí	time of war, in time of war	5
zhànshù	tactics	6
zhànyào	explosives, dynamite	8
zhànyàobāo	dynamite charge	8
zhēnchá	to reconnoiter; reconnaissance	8
zhèndì	position (mil.), battlefield, front (mil.)	8
zhēng	to draft (troops or recruits)	1
zhēngbīngzhì	conscription system	1
zhèngguījūn	Regular Army	4
zhìdù	system	1
zhǐhuīyuán	commander, (mil.) (actually officers as opposed to enlisted personnel)	9
...zhījiān	between	3
zhìliàng	quality	9
zhǐyǒu	only	5
zhìyuàn	to do something of one's own will, to volunteer	4
zhìyuànbingzhì	voluntary enlistment system	1
zhǐzhànyuán	officers and men	9
zhuā	to stress, to pay special attention to	9

zhuāngbèi	equipment; to equip	
zhuāngtián	to load (a weapon)	
zhuózhòng	to stress, to emphasize	6
zǐdàn	bullet, shell (for shotgun only)	6
zīshì	position (in the sense of posture)	7
zuòzhàn	to fight (mil.), to combat (mil.)	8
zǔzhī	organization; to organize	1